

Unclassified//FOUO

Joint Publication 3-07.2



Joint Tactics, Techniques,
and Procedures for
Antiterrorism



Second Draft
8 December 2004



Unclassified//FOUO

1
2
3
4
5
6
7
8
9
10
11
12
13
14
15
16
17
18
19
20
21
22
23
24
25
26
27
28
29
30
31
32
33
34
35
36
37
38
39
40
41
42
43
44
45
46
47

PREFACE

1. Scope

~~—This publication sets forth the tactics, techniques, and procedures governing the joint conduct of United States (US) antiterrorism (AT) operations. It provides a basis for understanding US national policy and general objectives relating to antiterrorism and explains important Department of Defense (DOD) and US Government agency command and control relationships. In addition, it outlines basic US military antiterrorism capabilities and provides commanders with guidance on how to organize, plan, and train for the employment of US forces in interagency and multinational antiterrorism operations.~~

This publication provides guidance and sets forth tactics, techniques, and procedures on how to organize, plan, and train for the joint employment of United States (US) forces in joint antiterrorism (AT) operations. It outlines US national policy and objectives relating to AT, explains important Department of Defense (DOD) and US government agency command and control relationships, and basic US military AT capabilities.

2. Purpose

This publication has been prepared under the direction of the Chairman of the Joint Chiefs of Staff (~~CJCS~~). It sets forth joint tactics, techniques, and procedures (JTTP) to govern the joint activities and performance of the Armed Forces of the United States in joint operations and provides the doctrinal basis for interagency coordination and US military involvement in multinational ~~and interagency~~ operations. It provides military guidance for the exercise of authority by combatant commanders and other joint force commanders (JFCs) and provides military guidance for use by the Armed Forces in preparing their appropriate plans. It is not the intent of this publication to restrict the authority of the joint force commander from organizing the force and executing the mission in a manner the JFC deems most appropriate to ensure unity of effort in the accomplishment of the overall mission.

3. Application

a. The JTTP and guidance established in this publication apply to the commanders of combatant commands, subunified commands, joint task forces, and subordinate components of these commands. These principles and guidance also may apply when significant forces of one Service are attached to forces of another Service or when significant forces of one Service support forces of another Service.

b. The guidance in this publication is authoritative; as such, these JTTP will be followed except when, in the judgment of the commander, exceptional circumstances dictate otherwise. If conflicts arise between the contents of this publication and the contents of Service publications, this publication will take precedence for the activities of joint forces unless the Chairman of the Joint Chiefs of Staff, normally in coordination with the other members of the Joint Chiefs of Staff, has provided more current and

1 specific guidance. Commanders of forces operating as part of a multinational (alliance or
2 coalition) military command should follow multinational doctrine and procedures ratified
3 by the United States. For doctrine and procedures not ratified by the United States,
4 commanders should evaluate and follow the multinational command's doctrine and
5 | procedures, where applicable and consistent with US law, regulations, and doctrine.
6

TABLE OF CONTENTS

| | PAGE |
|---|-------------------------|
| EXECUTIVE SUMMARY | TBD |
| CHAPTER I | |
| INTRODUCTION | |
| • General | I-1 |
| • Purpose | I-1 |
| • Force Protection and Antiterrorism Relationship | I-32 |
| • Overview of Antiterrorism Program Elements | I-34 |
| • Overview of Department of Defense Role and Responsibility | I-4 |
| CHAPTER II | |
| TERRORIST THREAT | |
| • <u>General</u> | <u>II-1</u> |
| • <u>Underlying Conditions</u> Terrorist Tactics | <u>II-1</u> |
| • <u>Operating Environment</u> Terrorist Groups | <u>II-6</u> |
| • <u>Terrorist Organization</u> <u>Modern Technologies</u> | <u>II-7</u> |
| <u>Tactics</u> | |
| • <u>Terrorist Group Structure and Organization</u> <u>Terrorism Against the Homeland</u> | <u>II-13</u> |
| <u>Targets</u> | |
| <u>Domestic Terrorism</u> | |
| CHAPTER III | |
| INTELLIGENCE, COUNTERINTELLIGENCE, AND THREAT ANALYSIS | |
| • Intelligence and Counterintelligence | III-1 |
| • Threat <u>Assessment</u> <u>Analysis</u> | <u>III-16</u> <u>10</u> |
| • <u>Countersurveillance</u> | <u>III-12</u> |
| CHAPTER IV | |
| LEGAL CONSIDERATIONS | |
| • Authority | IV-61 |
| • Limits of Military and Intelligence Support to Civil Authorities | IV-72 |
| • <u>Jurisdiction and Authority for Handling Terrorist Incidents</u> | <u>IV-18</u> |
| • Federal Agencies and the Military | IV-237 |
| • Military Installation Commander's Responsibilities | IV-4320 |

| | | |
|----|---|--------------|
| 1 | CHAPTER V | |
| 2 | ANTITERRORISM PROGRAM; INSTALLATION, BASE, SHIP, UNIT, AND PORT | |
| 3 | | |
| 4 | • Overview of Program Concept | V-1 |
| 5 | • Antiterrorism Plan Development | V-248 |
| 6 | • Combatant Commander's Responsibility | V-329 |
| 7 | | |
| 8 | CHAPTER VI | |
| 9 | PREVENTIVE MEASURES AND CONSIDERATIONS | |
| 10 | | |
| 11 | • Commander's Responsibility | VI-1 |
| 12 | • Antiterrorism Force Protection in High-Threat Areas | VI-1 |
| 13 | • Tactical Force Protection | VI-2214 |
| 14 | • <u>Suicide Bombers/High Risk Vehicle Checkpoints.....</u> | <u>VI-14</u> |
| 15 | | |
| 16 | CHAPTER VII | |
| 17 | TERRORIST INCIDENT RESPONSE <u>AND TERRORISM CONSEQUENCE</u> | |
| 18 | <u>MANAGEMENT</u> | |
| 19 | | |
| 20 | • General | VII-1 |
| 21 | • Terrorist Incident Management Planning | -VII-32 |
| 22 | • Initial Response | VII-42 |
| 23 | • Follow-On Response | VII-104 |
| 24 | • Initial Response to a Weapons of Mass Destruction Attack <u>CBRNE Attack</u> | |
| 25 | | VII-155 |
| 26 | • Special Considerations | VII-187 |
| 27 | | |
| 28 | APPENDICES | |
| 29 | | |
| 30 | A Threat Assessment | A-1 |
| 31 | B Vulnerability Assessment | B-1 |
| 32 | C Criticality Assessment | C-1 |
| 33 | D <u>Sample</u> Antiterrorism Plan Format | D-1 |
| 34 | E Antiterrorism Checklist | E-1 |
| 35 | F Force Protection Condition System | F-1 |
| 36 | G Maritime Security Conditions | G-1 |
| 37 | H High Risk Personnel Protection | H-1 |
| 38 | J Jurisdictional Authority for Handling Terrorist Incidents | J-1 |
| 39 | K References | K-1 |
| 40 | L Administrative Instructions | L-1 |
| 41 | | |
| 42 | GLOSSARY | |
| 43 | | |
| 44 | Part I Abbreviations and Acronyms | GL-1 |
| 45 | Part II Terms and Definitions | GL-8 |

1
2
3
4
5
6
7
8
9
10
11
12
13
14
15
16
17
18

FIGURES

I-1 Antiterrorism & Counterterrorism I-2
~~I-2 Force Protection I-3~~
II-1 Categories of Terrorist Groups II-137
II-2 ~~Terrorist Organization Basic-Structure~~ Pyramid of a Typical Terrorist Organization II-198
III-1 Sources of Intelligence and Counterintelligence III-32
III-2 Information Requirements III-169
IV-1 Request for Assistance IV-93
~~IV-2 Federal Territorial Jurisdiction Categories IV-19~~
IV-32 Approval for Use of Military Force IV-4219
~~VI-1 Situation Estimate Checklist..... VI-3~~
VI-12 Security Force Equipment VI-86
VI-23 Principles of Riot Control VI-2113
VII-1 Special Considerations VII-239
J-1 Jurisdictional Authority for Handling Terrorist Incidents J-1

1
2
3

CHAPTER I INTRODUCTION

"There is another type of warfare — new in its intensity, ancient in its origin — war by guerrillas, subversives, insurgents, assassins; war by ambush instead of by combat, by infiltration instead of aggression, seeking victory by eroding and exhausting the enemy instead of engaging him . . . It preys on unrest . . ."

John F Kennedy
Address to the Graduating Class,
US Naval Academy, 6 June 1962

4
5
6

1. General

7 The term "terrorism" is defined as the calculated use of unlawful violence or threat
8 of unlawful violence to inculcate fear; intended to coerce or to intimidate governments or
9 societies in the pursuit of goals that are generally political, religious, or ideological (Joint
10 Publication (JP) 1-02). This definition is the foundation, throughout this publication, for
11 the guidance to ~~combatant commanders, subunified commanders, joint task force (JTF)~~
12 ~~commanders, and component joint force~~ commanders (JFCs) and their subordinates.
13 Specific policy, directive guidance, standards, and procedures for the Department of
14 Defense (DOD) ~~combating~~ antiterrorism (AT) ~~terrorism (CbT)~~ program is contained in
15 DOD Directive (DODD) 2000.12, "~~DoD~~ Antiterrorism (AT) Program," August 18,
16 2003, ~~DOD Instruction (DODI) 2000.14, DoD Combating Terrorism Program~~
17 ~~Procedures~~, ~~DODD-O-2000.12-H, "DoD Antiterrorism Handbook," 9 February 2004,~~
18 and ~~DoDI O~~ 2000.16, ~~DoD Antiterrorism Standards~~ "(DRAFT), March XX, 2004."
19

20
21

2. Purpose

22 Combating terrorism involves actions including antiterrorism (AT) (defensive
23 measures used to reduce the vulnerability to terrorist acts), ~~and~~ counterterrorism (CT)
24 (offensive measures taken to prevent, deter, preempt and respond to terrorism), terrorist
25 consequence management (preparation for and response to consequences of a terrorist
26 incident), and intelligence support (collection or dissemination of terrorism related
27 information), taken to oppose terrorism throughout the entire threat spectrum. This
28 publication ~~addresses only AT does not address CT~~. The following definitions, also
29 shown in Figure I-1, are provided to assist in understanding the difference between AT
30 and CT:
31

32 a. Antiterrorism is defensive measures used to reduce the vulnerability of
33 individuals and property to terrorist acts, to include limited response and containment by
34 local military and civilian forces.
35

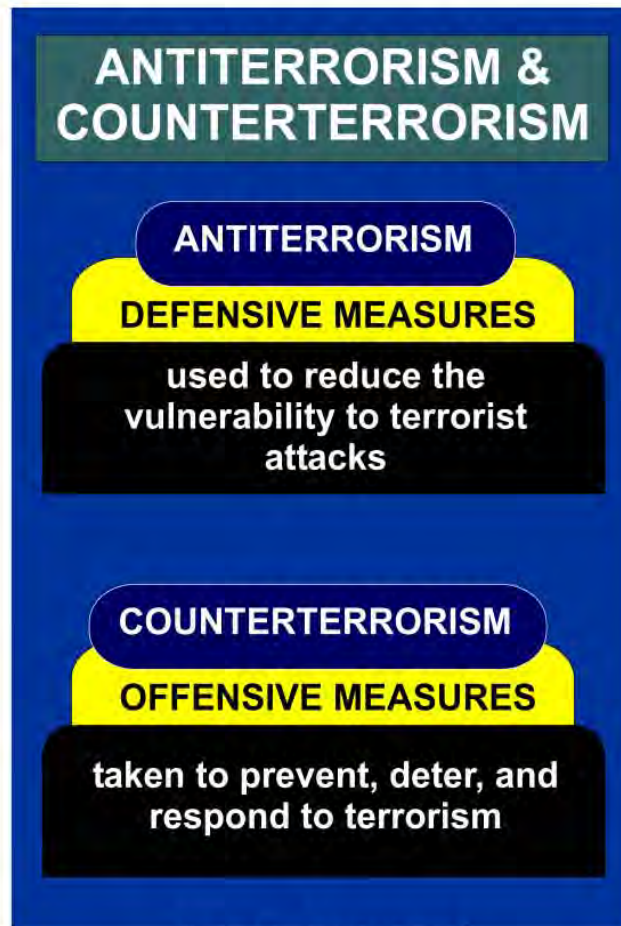


Figure I-1. Antiterrorism & Counterterrorism

1 b. Counterterrorism is offensive measures taken to prevent, deter, and respond to
2 terrorism. Sensitive and compartmented CT programs are addressed in relevant National
3 Security Decision Directives, National Security Directives, contingency joint operation
4 plans, and other relevant classified documents.

5
6 **3. Force Protection and Antiterrorism Relationship**

7
8 a. Force protection (FP) should not be used as a synonymous term with AT or other
9 supporting tasks. It is an overarching concept and mission responsibility inherent to
10 command within all military operations. As discussed throughout this publication, AT, in
11 contrast, is a sub-element of combating terrorism, which is a subset of the broader FP
12 concept.

13
14 (1) Force protection: The DOD approved definition of FP is currently articulated as:
15 “Actions taken to prevent or mitigate hostile actions against DOD personnel (to include

1 family members), resources, facilities, and critical information. FP does not include actions
 2 to defeat the enemy or protect against accidents, weather, or disease.” These actions
 3 conserve the force’s fighting capability so it can be applied at the decisive time and place and
 4 incorporate the coordinated and synchronized offensive and defensive measures to enable the
 5 effective employment of the joint force while degrading the opportunities of the enemy.

6
 7 (2) Antiterrorism: AT, on the other hand, is described as: “Defensive measures used
 8 to reduce the vulnerability of individuals and property to terrorist acts, to include limited
 9 response and containment by local military and civilian forces.” While AT integrates other
 10 defensive actions (such as physical security, CBRN defense, operations security,
 11 counterintelligence, construction standards, etc.) in a comprehensive program designed to
 12 protect against terrorist attack, it does not include all the aspects of FP.

13
 14 (3) FP is a joint task. As such, joint force commanders conduct FP in similar fashion
 15 as movement and maneuver; intelligence, surveillance, and reconnaissance; employing
 16 firepower; sustaining operations; operating in a CBRN environment; and providing
 17 command and control during the execution of campaigns, major operations, and tactical
 18 engagements. FP actions are to be accomplished by the Services and by joint forces under

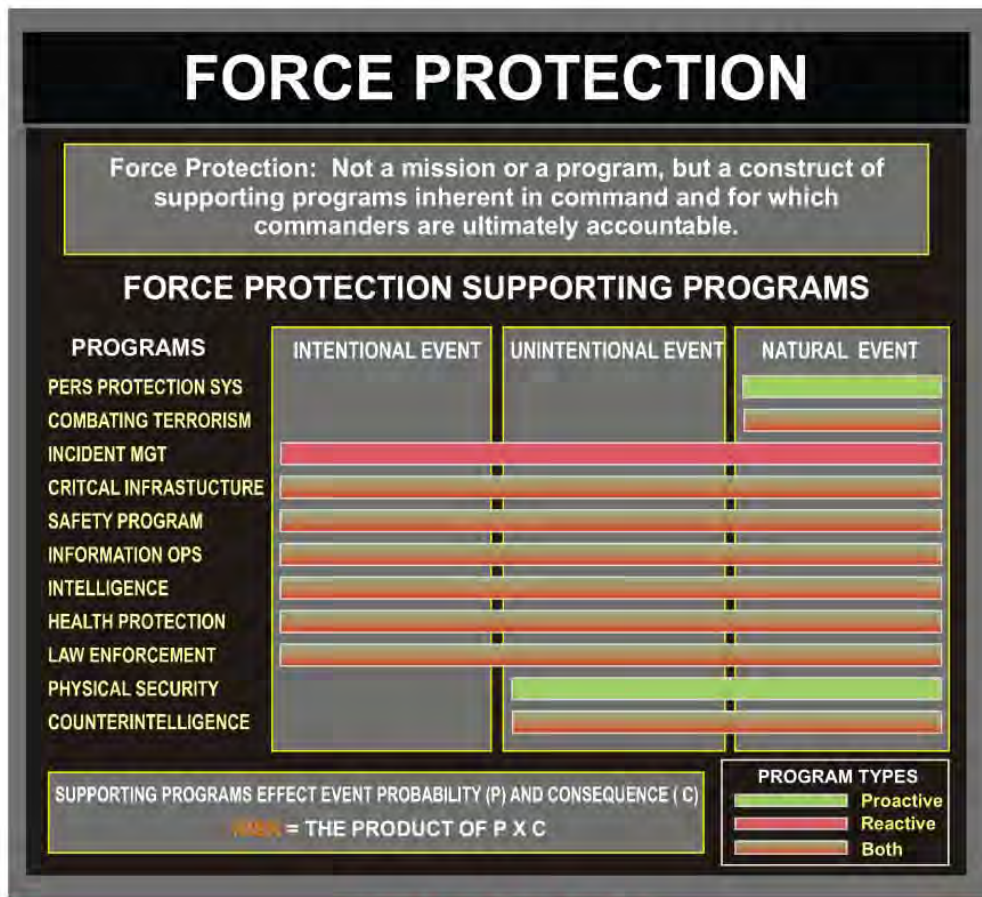


Figure I-2. Force Protection

1 joint command and control using joint doctrine. FP can be applied at multiple levels of
2 command, from the strategic-theater, through the operational, and down to the tactical level.

3
4 **4. Overview of AT Antiterrorism Program Elements**

5
6 The ~~Department of Defense's DOD's~~ AT program is one of several security-related
7 programs that fall under the overarching FT concept. Combating Terrorism and Force
8 Protection programs. The AT program ~~shall be~~ is a collective, proactive effort focused
9 on the ~~prevention and detection~~ detection and prevention of terrorist attacks against DOD
10 personnel, their families, facilities, installations, and infrastructure critical to mission
11 accomplishment as well as the preparations to defend against and planning for the
12 response to the consequences of terrorist incidents. Although not elements of AT, plans
13 for terrorism consequence management preparedness and response measures as well as
14 plans for continuing essential military operations are important adjuncts to an effective
15 AT program. ~~The minimum elements of an AT program shall be all the elements and~~
16 ~~assessments of the risk management process, planning, training and exercises, resource~~
17 ~~generation, and program reviews.~~ The minimum elements of an AT program are: risk
18 management, planning, training and exercises, resource generation, and comprehensive
19 program review. The process, or sequence, of AT program elements should be iterative
20 and serve continuously to refine the AT Pplan.



21
22
23
24 *Every commander has ~~a the~~ responsibility for the security of the command against*
25 *~~varying levels and types of~~ terrorist threat attacks.*

26
27 **5. Overview of DOD Role and Responsibility**

28
29 a. ~~It is~~ DOD policy ~~that~~:

30
31 (1) ~~The DOD C~~components ~~and the DOD~~ elements, and personnel shall be
32 afforded protected protection from terrorist acts through a high priority, comprehensive
33 AT program. ~~The Department of Defense's AT program shall be all encompassing using~~
34 an integrated systems approach. The DOD's AT program shall be one of the programs,
35 when executed, that contributes to the commander's overall FP responsibility.

1
2 (2) The ~~C~~ommanders at all levels have the responsibility and authority to
3 enforce appropriate security measures to ensure the protection of DOD elements and
4 personnel subject to their control. ~~Commanders~~ ~~and~~ shall ensure the AT awareness and
5 readiness of all DOD elements and personnel (including dependent family members)
6 assigned or attached. ~~Commanders~~ ~~They~~ must also ensure appropriate AT protection and
7 readiness of DOD elements and personnel while pursuing mission accomplishment.
8

9 (3) The geographic ~~C~~ombatant ~~C~~ommanders' AT policies take precedence
10 over all AT policies or programs of any DOD ~~C~~omponent operating or existing in that
11 command's area of responsibility (AOR) except for those under the security responsibility
12 of a ~~C~~hief of ~~M~~ission (COM). All DOD personnel traveling into a ~~C~~ombatant
13 ~~C~~ommander's AOR will familiarize themselves with all AOR-specific AT policies and
14 comply with them.
15

16 (4) A Combating Terrorism Readiness Initiatives Fund (CbT-RIF) is maintained
17 to provide a flexible means to respond to emergent and/or emergency AT requirements
18 (Chairman of the Joint Chiefs of Staff Instruction 5261.01~~BC~~). More information can be
19 found online at "www.atcp.sml.mil."
20

21 (5) All DOD military, DOD civilians, DOD dependent family members, and
22 DOD contractors shall comply with theater, country, and special clearance requirements
23 (DOD Directive 4500.54, *Official Temporary Duty Travel Abroad*, and ~~D~~~~OD~~ 4500.54-G,
24 *~~D~~~~OD~~ Foreign Clearance Guide (FCG)*, before overseas travel).
25

26 (6) Commanders do not have the same legal responsibility to provide security
27 for DOD contractors as that provided for military forces or direct-hire employees.
28 Contractors remain private US citizens. The Department of Defense shall assist the
29 Department of State (DOS), where militarily feasible, in supporting efforts to protect US
30 citizens abroad. Contractors are required to contact the ~~C~~ombatant ~~C~~ommand to
31 obtain, and comply with, the specific AT guidance for that particular area. Commanders
32 are required to offer AT training to contractors under the terms specified in the contract.
33 Contractors working within a US military facility or in close proximity of US Forces
34 shall receive incidentally the benefits of measures undertaken to protect US Forces.
35 Additionally, commanders may provide an additional, higher level of security, to which
36 the government may have agreed pursuant to a particular contract.
37

38 (7) Compliance with the "No Double Standard" policy on dissemination of
39 terrorist threat information is maintained. (See Chapter IV.)
40

41 b. Assistant Secretary of Defense for Homeland Defense (~~ASD/HD~~ ~~ASD~~(~~HD~~)).
42 The ~~F~~iscal year 2003 National Defense Authorization Act directed the establishment of
43 an assistant secretary of defense for homeland defense. Section 902 of Public Law 107-
44 314, Reorganization of Office of Secretary of Defense for Administration of Duties
45 Relating to Homeland Defense and Combating Terrorism, establishes one of the
46 ~~A~~ssistant ~~S~~ecretaries as the ~~ASD/HD~~ ~~ASD~~(~~HD~~) and further stipulates that he shall

1 have as his principal duty the overall supervision of the homeland defense activities of
2 the Department of Defense.

3
4 ~~———— (1) The Office of the Assistant Secretary of Defense for Homeland Defense~~
5 ~~is established within the office of the Under Secretary for Policy.~~

6
7 ~~———— (2) In the role of providing overall supervision of homeland defense activities~~
8 ~~and civil support within Department of Defense, the ASD(HD) responsibilities include:~~

9
10 ~~———— (a) Develop strategic planning guidance for DOD's role in Homeland~~
11 ~~Security (HLS).~~

12
13 ~~———— (b) Develop and update force employment policy, guidance, and oversight.~~

14
15 ~~———— (c) Serve as the DOD Domestic Incident Manager for DOD support to~~
16 ~~State and local civil authorities.~~

17
18 ~~———— (d) Provide DOD support, as appropriate, to assist in developing capacities~~
19 ~~and capabilities of civilian agencies requisite to conducting homeland security missions.~~

20
21 ~~———— (e) When directed, serve as the Secretary of Defense's (SecDef's)~~
22 ~~executive agent for homeland defense (HLD) and as directed, assist the Secretary in~~
23 ~~providing guidance, through the Chairman, Joint Chiefs of Staff (CJCS), to the combatant~~
24 ~~commanders for HLD missions and military activities in support to civil authorities.~~

25
26 ~~———— (f) Provide coordination with the Office of Homeland Security.~~

27
28 (1)The principal duty of the ASD(HD) is to provide overall supervision of HD
29 and CS activities support within DOD. In that role, the ASD(HD) responsibilities
30 include:

31
32 (a) Developing strategic planning guidance for DOD's role in HS.

33
34 (b) Developing and updating force employment policy, guidance, and
35 oversight.

36
37 (c) Overseeing DOD activities that provide MACA in domestic
38 emergencies in accordance with existing national level emergency response plans and
39 approved memoranda of understanding.

40
41 (d) Providing DOD support, as appropriate, to assist in developing
42 capacities and capabilities of civilian agencies requisite to conduct HS missions.

43
44 (e) Serving as the DOD domestic crisis manager focusing on coordination
45 and integration of DOD domestic crisis activities with other departments and agencies
46 and the combatant commanders. Exceptions include those activities requiring the use of

1 special operations forces.

2
3 (f) Assuming responsibility for the Defense Critical Infrastructure Program
4 (DCIP), domestic AT and FP, HD interagency coordination, HD technology transfer,
5 NSSEs and COOP/COG.

6
7 c. The Chairman of the Joint Chiefs of Staff shall:

8
9 (1) Serve as the principal advisor to the Secretary of Defense for all DOD AT
10 issues.

11
12 (2) Prepare joint doctrine and assist the Assistant Secretary of Defense (Special
13 Operations and Low Intensity Conflict) [ASD (SO/LIC)] in development and
14 maintenance of the AT program, standards and procedures. Review doctrine, policy,
15 standards, and procedures of the DOD Components. Review, coordinate, and oversee for
16 the Secretary of Defense and in conjunction with the DOD components and Services, the
17 AT training for all DOD and Armed Forces personnel (including their dependent family
18 members).

19
20 (3) Ensure the Chairman's Program Review and the Chairman's Program
21 Assessment include a summary of AT requirements as determined by the Joint
22 Requirements Oversight Council and derived from Combatant Commander Integrated
23 Priority Lists.

24
25 (4) Annually, as part of the DOD program and Planning, Programming, and
26 Budgeting, and Execution System (PPBES) cycle, assist the Military Departments in
27 determining the merit of AT requirement submissions. Review the adequacy of resources
28 proposed by the Military Departments to determine whether they meet AT objectives and
29 support Combatant Commanders' AT programs. Coordinate and make recommendations
30 on unresolved AT requirements during programming and budget reviews. These reviews
31 shall be done in conjunction with OSD Port Support Activities (PSAs) having resource,
32 program, and budget oversight responsibilities for the functional areas that comprise the
33 AT budget aggregate. Advise the Secretary of Defense of any changes needed to meet
34 AT requirements.

35
36 (5) Assess the DOD Components' AT policies and programs for the protection
37 of DOD elements and personnel, including DOD-owned, leased, or managed
38 infrastructure and assets critical to mission accomplishment and other DOD-owned,
39 leased or managed mission essential assets. Ensure assessments are conducted of
40 Chairman of the Joint Chiefs of Staff exercises, air/sea ports of embarkation/debarkation,
41 and in-transit forces.

42
43 (6) Assess AT as an element of the overall force planning function of any force
44 deployment decision. Periodically reassess AT posture of deployed forces. Review
45 Combatant Commanders' joint operation plans (OPLANS, CONPLANS, and functional
46 plans), deployment orders, and other relevant documents for AT issues considerations.

1
2
3
4
5
6
7
8
9
10
11
12
13
14
15
16
17
18
19
20
21
22
23
24
25
26
27
28
29
30
31
32
33
34
35
36
37
38
39
40
41
42
43
44
45
46

(7) Assess the implementation of Force Protection Conditions (FPCONs) for uniform implementation and dissemination as specified by DOD Directive 2000.12, *DeOD Antiterrorism (AT) Program*, DOD Instruction 2000.16, *DeOD Antiterrorism Standards*, and DOD Handbook O-2000.12-H, *DeOD Antiterrorism Handbook*.

(8) Provide representatives to the DOD Antiterrorism Coordinating Committee (ATCC) and appropriate subcommittees as required under enclosure 3 of *DeODD* 2000.12. Provide an observer to the Overseas Security Policy Board. Appoint the Director for Operations, Joint Staff (J3) to co-chair the Antiterrorism Coordinating Committee - Senior Steering Group (ATCC-SSG) and the Deputy Director for Global Operations (Antiterrorism/Force Protection) Joint Staff to co-chair the ATCC under enclosure 3 of *DeODD* 2000.12.

(9) Coordinate with the Under Secretary of Defense for Intelligence and the Assistant Secretary of Defense (Special Operations and Low-Intensity Conflict (ASD[SO/LIC]) on sharing of terrorism intelligence and counterintelligence data and law enforcement (LE), suspicious activity report (SAR) information on AT. This includes threats posed to the DOD Components and the DOD elements and personnel by domestic and foreign terrorists.

(10) Assess the capability of the Military Departments, the Combatant Commands, and the Defense intelligence and security organizations to collect, receive, evaluate, analyze, and disseminate all relevant data on terrorist activities, trends, and indicators of imminent attack. Also assess the capability to fuse suspicious activity reports from military security, law enforcement, and counterintelligence organizations with national-level intelligence, surveillance, and reconnaissance collection activities.

(11) In coordination with the ASD(SO/LIC), manage and administer the Chairman of the Joint Chiefs of Staff CbT-RIF pursuant to Chairman of the Joint Chiefs of Staff Instruction 5261.01 BC, *Combating Terrorism Readiness Initiative Fund*, July 1, 2001. Ensure ~~16~~-out-year maintenance costs for CbT-RIF-funded projects are identified and coordinated with the Military Departments so that they are addressed during the PPBS PPBE cycle.

(12) Maintain a centralized database of all vulnerability assessments (VAs) conducted. Prepare and disseminate analysis of DOD-wide AT vulnerability trends correlated to Military Department efforts within the PPBS process.

(13) Be responsible for policy guidance and oversight of the Antiterrorism Enterprise Portal (ATEP). ~~CJCS guidance is transmitted to the Director, Joint Staff, for implementation.~~

(a) ~~Antiterrorism Enterprise Portal.~~ ATEP encompasses the policies, procedures, ~~trained personnel~~, and information systems that support trained personnel in managing the elements of an AT program, from the Joint Staff through the operating

1 forces and components, ~~along the entire spectrum of warfare, across the range of military~~
2 ~~operations. These elements include threat assessments, vulnerability assessments,~~
3 ~~planning, exercises, program reviews and training. These elements include risk~~
4 ~~management, planning, training and exercises, resource generation, and comprehensive~~
5 ~~program review.~~

6
7 (b) ~~The Antiterrorism Enterprise Portal— ATEP System.—A is a~~
8 comprehensive web enabled system that provides the Joint Staff, combatant commands,
9 Services, Defense agencies, ~~DOD Field Activities, subordinate joint~~ task forces and
10 components, and others with information processing and dissemination capabilities
11 necessary for AT programs. An evolutionary acquisition and implementation strategy
12 provides warfighters with required operational capabilities. This strategy supports
13 operator/user participation, incremental fielding of proven technology, and shorter time
14 periods between modernization cycles.

15
16 d. Geographic ~~C~~ombatant ~~C~~ommanders shall:

17
18 (1) Establish AT policies and programs for the protection of all DOD elements
19 and personnel in their AOR, including those for whom the ~~C~~ombatant ~~C~~ommander
20 assumes AT responsibility based on a memorandum of agreement (MOA) with a ~~Chief of~~
21 ~~Mission (COM)~~. Coordinate with the COMs in the AOR to identify all non-combatant
22 commander DOD components and DOD elements and personnel. In instances where AT
23 protection may be more effectively provided through the combatant commander,
24 establish country-specific MOAs.

25
26 (2) Ensure AT policies and programs include specific prescriptive standards
27 derived from ~~DODI Instruction 2000.16, DoD Antiterrorism Standards~~, to address
28 specific terrorist ~~threat~~ capabilities and geographic settings, particularly regarding
29 infrastructure critical to mission accomplishment and other DOD-owned, leased, or
30 managed mission essential assets.

31
32 (3) ~~Exercise tactical control (TACON) (for force protection) over all DOD~~
33 ~~elements and personnel (including force protection responsibility for DOD dependent~~
34 ~~family members) (except those under the security responsibility of a COM) within the~~
35 ~~Combatant Commander's AOR. TACON (for force protection) applies to all DOD~~
36 ~~personnel assigned permanently or temporarily, transiting through, or performing~~
37 ~~exercises or training in the Combatant Commander's AOR. TACON (for force~~
38 ~~protection) is in addition to a Combatant Commander's normal exercise of operational~~
39 ~~control (OPCON) over assigned forces. Establish force protection policies for all DOD~~
40 ~~personnel in the combatant commander's AOR. The geographic combatant commander's~~
41 ~~force protection policies or programs of any DOD component deployed in that~~
42 ~~command's AOR and not otherwise under the security responsibility of the DOS.~~
43 ~~Transient forces do not come under the chain of command of the area commander solely~~
44 ~~by their movement across operational area boundaries, except when the combatant~~
45 ~~commander is exercising TACON authority for force protection purposes.~~

46

1 | (4) Periodically, assess and review the AT programs of all ~~combatant~~
2 | ~~commander~~-assigned DOD ~~C~~components in their AOR. Assess the AT programs of all
3 | DOD components performing in their AOR that are not under the ~~security~~ responsibility
4 | of a COM. ~~Military Service e~~Component commands ~~or other subordinate commands~~
5 | ~~reporting to the Combatant Commander~~ may be delegated responsibility to conduct these
6 | assessments. Ensure AT program reviews include a validation of the ~~17 thoroughness of~~
7 | ~~the AT~~-risk management methodology used to assess asset criticality, terrorist threat, and
8 | vulnerabilities. AT program reviews shall also evaluate installation and activity
9 | preparedness to respond to terrorist incidents (including chemical, biological,
10 | radiological, nuclear, and high-yield explosives [CBRNE] incidents), and the plans for
11 | managing the consequences of terrorist incidents and maintaining continuity of essential
12 | military operations. Relocate forces as necessary and report to the Secretary of Defense
13 | through the Chairman of the Joint Chiefs of Staff pertinent actions taken for ~~AT~~
14 | protection.

15 |
16 | (5) Consistent with DOD Instruction 5210.84, *Security of ~~D~~OD Personnel at*
17 | *US Missions Abroad*, and all appropriate memorandums of understanding (MOUs), serve
18 | as the DOD point of contact with host-nation (HN) officials on matters involving AT
19 | policies and programs measures.

20 |
21 | (6) Provide updates to DOD Directive 4500.54, *Official Temporary Duty Travel*
22 | *Abroad*, and DOD 4500.54-G, *~~D~~OD Foreign Clearance Guide (FCG)*, stating command
23 | travel requirements and theater entry requirements.

24 |
25 | (7) Ensure all assigned military, DOD civilians, Defense contractors, and their
26 | family members receive applicable AT training and briefings pursuant to DOD
27 | Instruction 2000.16, *~~D~~OD Antiterrorism Standards*. Ensure personnel traveling in the
28 | AOR comply with DOD Directive 4500.54, *Official Temporary Duty Travel Abroad*, and
29 | DOD 4500.54-G, *~~D~~OD Foreign Clearance Guide (FCG)*. Ensure personnel are aware
30 | of any Travel Warnings in effect at the time of travel. Ensure that all DOD personnel
31 | (including dependent family members) scheduled for permanent change of station to the
32 | geographic combatant commander's AOR or to another geographic combatant
33 | commander's AOR receive required AT training and briefings (e.g., AOR Updates) in
34 | compliance with DOD Instruction 2000.16. Identify and disseminate to deploying force
35 | providers specific AOR pre-deployment training requirements that all personnel must
36 | complete before arrival in theater.

37 |
38 | (8) Identify, document, validate, prioritize, and submit to the Joint Staff the
39 | resource requirements necessary to achieve the AT program objectives for each activity
40 | under the Combatant Commander or for which that Commander has ~~AT~~-responsibility.
41 | Work with the Joint Staff and the Service component commands to ensure that resource
42 | requirements to implement the AT programs are identified and programmed according to
43 | PPBSE procedures.

44 |
45 | (9) Establish command relationships and policies for subordinate commands,
46 | including Joint Task Forces, to ensure that effective mechanisms are in place to maintain

1 ~~an AT~~-protective posture commensurate with the terrorist threat.

2
3 (10) Assess the terrorist threat for the AOR according to ~~this DOD Directive~~
4 2000.12 and provide threat assessment information to the DOD components and the
5 COMs in the AOR. Develop risk mitigation measures and maintain a database of those
6 measures and the issues that necessitated their implementation. On the basis of the threat
7 ~~18~~-assessment, identify and designate incumbents of high-risk billets and dependent
8 family members to receive AT resident training.

9
10 (11) Keep subordinate commanders informed of the nature and degree of the
11 threat. Ensure that commanders are prepared to respond to changes in threats and local
12 security circumstances. Ensure that the COMs are fully and currently informed of any
13 threat information relating to the security of those DOD elements and personnel under
14 their ~~security~~-responsibility, but not under the command of the combatant commander.

15 (12) Ensure compliance with the "No-Double-Standard" policy (see Chapter
16 IV).

17
18 (13) Submit to the Chairman of the Joint Chiefs of Staff emergent and/or
19 emergency AT requirements that cannot be funded by the Military Departments for CbT-
20 RIF funding consideration.

21
22 (14) Ensure FPCONs are uniformly implemented and disseminated as specified
23 by DODD 2000.12, ~~DeOD~~ *Antiterrorism (AT) Program*, DOD Instruction 2000.16,
24 ~~DeOD~~ *Antiterrorism Standards*, and DODD O-2000.12-H, ~~DeOD~~ *Antiterrorism*
25 *Handbook*.

26
27 (15) Coordinate AT program issues with the functional Combatant
28 Commanders, the COMs, the Defense Agencies, ~~A~~DOD Field Activities, and the Military
29 Departments, as appropriate.

30
31 (16) Provide a representative to the DOD ATCC and appropriate
32 subcommittees, as required under enclosure 3 of ~~DeOD~~ 2000.12.

33
34 (17) Ensure a capability exists to collect, receive, evaluate, analyze, and
35 disseminate all relevant data on terrorist activities, trends, and indicators of imminent
36 attack. Develop and implement the capability to fuse suspicious activity reports from
37 military security, law enforcement, and counterintelligence organizations with national-
38 level intelligence, surveillance, and reconnaissance collection activities.

39
40 (18) Develop a geographic AOR, Combatant Commander-oriented AT Strategic
41 Plan that details the vision, mission, goals, and performance measures in support of the
42 Department of Defense's AT Strategic Plan.

43
44 e. Functional Combatant Commanders shall:

45
46 (1) Establish AT policies and programs for assigned DOD elements and

1 personnel including assessment and protection of facilities and appropriate level of AT
2 training and briefings. Coordinate programs with the appropriate ~~Combatant~~
3 ~~Commanders geographic combatant commander~~ and ~~the~~ COMs.

4
5 (2) Coordinate with the geographic Combatant Commanders to ensure adequate
6 AT protection of forces.

7
8 (3) Ensure that subordinate elements, which are tenant units on Military Service
9 installations, coordinate their AT programs and requirements with the host installation
10 commander. Differences shall be resolved through the applicable Combatant Commander
11 and the Service component command chain of command.

12
13 (4) Identify and designate incumbents of high-risk billets and dependent family
14 members requiring AT resident training. Provide AT resident training to personnel
15 assigned to high-risk billets and others, as applicable.

16
17 (5) For emergent and/or emergency AT requirements that cannot be funded
18 through other means, submit requirements to the Chairman of the Joint Chiefs of Staff for
19 CbT-RIF consideration.

20
21 (6) Provide a representative to the DOD ATCC and appropriate subcommittees,
22 as required under enclosure 3 of ~~DOD~~DD 2000.12.

23
24 (7) Identify, document, and submit to the Joint Staff the resource requirements
25 necessary to achieve AT program objectives for each activity under the Combatant
26 Command or for which the ~~Commander~~ has ~~AT~~-responsibility. Work with the Service
27 component commands to ensure that resource requirements to implement the AT
28 programs are identified and programmed according to ~~PPBSES~~ procedures.

29
30 (8) Develop ~~their own a functional~~ Combatant Commander-oriented AT
31 Strategic Plan that details the vision, mission, goals, and performance measures in
32 support of the Department of Defense and geographic Combatant Commanders' AT
33 Strategic Plans.

34
35 f. Directors of other Defense Agencies and ~~DOD~~ Field Activities, Office of the
36 Secretary of Defense (OSD), Principal Staff Assistants, and those that report directly to
37 the Secretary or Deputy Secretary of Defense, shall:

38
39 (1) Support the geographic Combatant Commanders as they exercise overall ~~FP~~
40 responsibility ~~and execute their AT programs for the personnel and resources for AT~~
41 within their respective AOR. Institute AT Programs, ensure that Defense Agencies and
42 ~~DOD~~ Field Activities conduct vulnerability assessments that address terrorism as a
43 potential threat to the DOD elements and personnel, and incorporate AT measures into
44 contingency response plans.

45
46 (2) Utilize DOD O-2000.12-H, ~~DoD~~ *Antiterrorism Handbook*, and DODI

1 2000.16, *DeOD Antiterrorism Standards*, for the AT planning and execution for their
2 headquarters (HQ) and all activities under their cognizance: consider mission,
3 characteristics of the activity, geographic location, threat level, and FPCON. Establish
4 prescriptive AT standards for installations and facilities not located on US military
5 installations. Coordinate with the applicable Combatant Commander to ensure AT ~~plans~~
6 ~~and~~-policies ~~and programs~~ are in concert with the geographic Combatant Commanders'
7 overall responsibility for the AOR.

8
9 (3) Comply with DODI 2000.16, *DeOD Antiterrorism Standards*, requirements
10 to maintain an AT training ~~and exercise~~ program. Ensure that all assigned personnel
11 comply with DOD Directive 4500.54, *Official Temporary Duty Travel Abroad*, and DOD
12 4500.54-G, *DeOD Foreign Clearance Guide (FCG)*. Ensure that personnel are aware of
13 any travel security advisories in effect at the time of travel. Ensure that all DOD
14 personnel (including dependent family members) scheduled for permanent changes of
15 station to foreign countries receive required AT training or briefing specified in DODI
16 2000.16.

17
18 (4) Provide members to the DOD ATCC and appropriate subcommittees, as
19 required under enclosure 3 of DODD 2000.12, *DeOD Antiterrorism (AT) Program*.

20
21 (5) As part of the PPBSE cycle, identify and document resource requirements
22 necessary to implement and maintain AT programs. Submit AT requirements to the
23 Secretary of Defense with an information copy to the Chairman of the Joint Chiefs of
24 Staff and the appropriate Combatant Commanders. Include resource requirements in
25 program and budget submissions. For emergent and/or emergency AT requirements that
26 cannot be funded through other means, submit requirements through the appropriate
27 Combatant Commander to the Chairman of the Joint Chiefs of Staff for CbT-RIF
28 consideration. Implement accounting procedures to enable precise reporting of data
29 submitted to Congress in the Congressional Budget Justification Book, including the
30 number and cost of personnel directly supporting the ~~Department of Defense's~~DOD's AT
31 program activities.

32
33 (6) Identify and designate incumbents of ~~high-risk~~ billets that are potentially
34 high-risk targets of terrorist attacks and dependent family members requiring AT resident
35 training. Ensure that AT resident training is provided to personnel assigned to high-risk
36 billets and others, as applicable.

37
38 (7) Ensure that current physical security technology and security requirements
39 are incorporated into all new contracts, where appropriate.

40
41 (8) Ensure AT protective features for facilities and installations are included in
42 the planning, design, and execution of military and minor construction projects to
43 mitigate AT-vulnerabilities and terrorist threats (Unified Facilities Criteria [UFC] 4-010-
44 01, *DeOD Minimum Antiterrorism Standards for Buildings*, Unified Facilities Criteria
45 [UFC] ~~4-010-10~~ 4-010-02, *DeOD Minimum Antiterrorism Standoff Distances for*
46 *Buildings*, and Unified Facilities Criteria [UFC] 4-021-01, *Design and O&M: Mass*

1 *Notification Systems).*

2
3 (9) Develop an AT Strategic Plan that details the vision, mission, goals, and
4 performance measures in support of the Department of Defense's AT Strategic Plan.

5
6 **Homeland Security vs. Homeland Defense**

7
8 Homeland security (HLS) is not the same as homeland defense (HLD).

9
10 ~~Homeland security HS is a concerted national effort to prevent terrorist attacks within the US,~~
11 ~~reduce America's vulnerability to terrorism, and minimize the damage and recover from~~
12 ~~attacks that do occur. the prevention, preemption, and deterrence of, and defense against,~~
13 ~~aggression targeted at US territory, sovereignty, domestic population, and infrastructure as~~
14 ~~well as the management of the consequences of such aggression and other domestic~~
15 ~~emergencies. It is a national team effort that begins with local, state and federal~~
16 ~~organizations.~~

17
18 ~~Homeland defense HD is the protection of US territory, sovereignty, domestic population and~~
19 ~~defense critical infrastructure dependencies and interdependencies, against threats and~~
20 ~~aggression, military attacks emanating from outside the United States.~~

21
22 g. With respect to combating terrorism and other homeland security concerns, the
23 Department of Defense is not the lead agency, but has significant supporting roles in
24 several areas. While in homeland ~~defense~~ defense activities, missions (air, land and
25 maritime defense) the Department of Defense DOD will take the lead and be supported
26 by other Federal agencies. Section 876 of Public Law 107-296, the Homeland Security
27 Act of 2002 states: "Nothing in this Act shall confer upon the Secretary [of Homeland
28 Security] any authority to engage in warfighting, the military defense of the United
29 States, or other military activities, nor shall anything in this Act limit the existing
30 authority of the Department of Defense or the Armed Forces to engage in warfighting,
31 the military defense of the United States, or other military activities."

32
33 ~~h. There are three distinct circumstances in which Department of Defense would be~~
34 ~~involved in activities within the United States in support of the security of the nation:~~

35
36 ~~———— (1) Extraordinary circumstances which require the Department to execute its~~
37 ~~traditional military missions. For example, combat air patrols and maritime defense~~
38 ~~operations. In these cases the Department plays the lead role and is supported by other~~
39 ~~Federal agencies. Also included in this category are cases in which the President,~~
40 ~~exercising his Constitutional authority as Commander in Chief, authorizes military~~
41 ~~action.~~

42
43 ~~———— (2) Emergency circumstances of a catastrophic nature. For example:~~
44 ~~responding to an attack or assisting in response to forest fires, floods, hurricanes,~~
45 ~~tornados, and so forth, during which the Department may be asked to act quickly to~~
46 ~~provide capabilities that other civilian agencies do not have.~~

47
48 ~~———— (3) Temporary circumstances, where the Department is given missions or~~
49 ~~assignments that are limited in duration or scope and other agencies have the lead from~~

1 ~~the outset. For example, security at a special event like the Olympics, or assisting other~~
 2 ~~Federal agencies in developing capabilities to detect chemical/biological threats.~~

3
 4
 5 ~~ih.~~ The Department of Defense established United States Northern Command
 6 (USNORTHCOM) in 2002 to consolidate under a single unified command existing
 7 missions that were previously executed by other military organizations.

8
 9 ~~(1)~~ The command's mission is homeland defense and civil support, specifically:

10
 11 ~~(+)~~ ~~(a)~~ Conduct operations to deter, prevent, and defeat threats and
 12 aggression aimed at the United States, its territories, and interests within the assigned
 13 area of responsibility; and

14
 15 ~~(2)~~ ~~(b)~~ As directed by the President or Secretary of Defense, provide
 16 military assistance to civil authorities including consequence management operations.

17
 18 ~~(3)~~ ~~(c)~~ USNORTHCOM's ~~area of responsibility AOR~~ is America's
 19 homeland. The AOR includes air, land, and sea approaches and encompasses the
 20 continental United States (CONUS), Alaska, Canada, Mexico, ~~Puerto Rico, the US~~
 21 ~~Virgin Islands, Bermuda, St. Pierre and Miquelon Islands, and waters out to 500 nautical~~
 22 ~~miles (excluding Greenland). and the surrounding water out to approximately 500~~

MILITARY ASSISTANCE TO CIVIL AUTHORITIES

A mission set of civil support following natural or manmade disasters, chemical, biological, radiological, nuclear, or high explosive consequence management, and other support as requires. Also called MACA.

With the exception of immediate responses under imminently serious conditions, any support that requires the deployment of forces or equipment assigned to a Combatant Command by Secretary of Defense Memorandum, must be coordinated with the Chairman of the Joint Chiefs of Staff. The Chairman shall evaluate each request to use Combatant Command forces or equipment to determine if there is a significant issue requiring Secretary of Defense approval. Orders providing assistance to civil authorities that are approved by the Secretary of Defense involving the use of Combatant Command forces or equipment shall be issued through the Chairman of the Joint Chiefs of Staff. Upon Secretary of Defense approval, the Secretary of the Army, when designated "the DOD Executive Agent," shall implement and oversee DOD support in accordance with such approved orders.

The Secretary of Defense is the approval authority for any requests for potentially lethal support (i.e., lethal to the public, a member of law enforcement, or a Service member) made by law enforcement agencies.

23 ~~nautical miles. It also includes the Gulf of Mexico, Puerto Rico, and the US Virgin~~
 24 ~~Islands.~~ The defense of Hawaii and our territories and possessions in the Pacific remains
 25 the responsibility of US Pacific Command.

1

UNITED STATES NORTHERN COMMAND



US Northern Command plans, organizes, and executes homeland defense and civil support missions, but has few permanently assigned forces. The command will be assigned forces whenever necessary to execute missions as ordered by the President.

Approximately 500 civil service employees and uniformed personnel representing all service branches provide this essential unity of command from US Northern Command's headquarters at Peterson Air Force Base in Colorado Springs, Colo.

1
2

CHAPTER II TERRORIST THREAT

"Terrorism is an arm the revolutionary can never relinquish."

Carlos Marighella
MINIMANUAL OF THE URBAN GUERRILLA

3
4

1. Overview General

5
6 A critical factor in understanding terrorism is the importance of the emotional
7 impact of the terrorist act on an audience other than the victim. This chapter provides
8 ~~background information an overview of issues dealing with concerning~~ the terrorist
9 threat ~~to enable the commander at any echelon to create and employ AT tactics,~~
10 ~~techniques, and procedures outlined in this publication.~~ Terrorism has long been a media
11 event and, as such, a phenomenon of our time. The terrorist attacks of September 11,
12 2001, marked a dramatic escalation in trends toward more destructive terrorist attacks
13 and ~~showed how vulnerable the United States is and the importance of countering~~
14 ~~terrorism toward more indiscriminate targeting among international terrorists. There is~~
15 ~~an apparent shift in operational intensity from traditional sources of terrorism—state~~
16 ~~sponsors and traditional terrorist organizations—to extremist groups. The new terrorist~~
17 ~~paradigm includes traditional state sponsored terrorism, well organized networks of non~~
18 ~~state actors, extremist groups and criminal networks. Moreover, they may act~~
19 ~~independently or in a well orchestrated offensive.~~

20
21

2. Terrorist Tactics

22
23 The general shift in tactics and methodologies among international terrorists
24 focuses on producing mass casualties. They have raised the stakes, operating now with a
25 more fatalistic mentality and incorporating multiple simultaneous attacks and suicide
26 bombings. Their targets will be just as likely economic (tourists, financial networks) or
27 agricultural ones (livestock, crops) as embassies or military forces/facilities. Their goal is
28 not just to win favor for their causes, but can be more specifically designed to wage
29 undeclared, unconventional war at will. The more common tactics employed by terrorist
30 groups are discussed below.

31
32 a. Assassination. A term generally applied to the killing of prominent persons
33 and symbolic enemies as well as traitors who defect from the group.

34
35 b. Arson. Less dramatic than most tactics, arson has the advantage of low risk
36 to the perpetrator and requires only a low level of technical knowledge.

37
38 c. Bombing. The improvised explosive device (IED) is the terrorist's weapon
39 of choice. IEDs can be inexpensive to produce and, because of the various detonation
40 techniques available, may be a low risk to the perpetrator. Suicidal bombings, however,
41 are a preferred common employment method. ~~Other a~~Advantages to these tactics include
42 their attention-getting capacity and the ability to control casualties through time of

1 | detonation and placement of the device. Announcing responsibility for the bombing or
2 | denying responsibility for the incident, ~~It is also easily deniable~~ should the action produce
3 | undesirable results, generates media interest and may lead to increased coverage of a
4 | terrorist groups agenda/activities.
5 |

6 | d. Hostage Taking. This usually is an overt seizure of one or more individuals
7 | with the intent of gaining publicity, concessions in return for release of the hostages, or as
8 | human shields to increase their success in carrying out a mission. While dramatic,
9 | hostage and hostage barricade situations are risky for the perpetrator.
10 |

11 | e. Kidnapping. While similar to hostage taking, kidnapping has significant
12 | differences. Kidnapping is usually a covert seizure of one or more specific persons in
13 | order to extract specific demands. The perpetrators of the action may not be known for a
14 | long time. News media attention is initially intense but decreases over time. Because of
15 | the time involved, successful kidnapping requires elaborate planning and logistics. The
16 | risk to the terrorist is less than in the hostage situation.
17 |

18 | f. Hijacking or Skyjacking. Sometimes employed as a means for escape,
19 | hijacking is normally carried out to produce a spectacular hostage situation or equally
20 | provide a vehicle for carrying out a lethal mission. Although trains, buses, and ships
21 | have been hijacked, aircraft are the preferred target because of their greater mobility and
22 | vulnerability.
23 |

24 | g. Seizure. Seizure usually involves a building or object that has value in the
25 | eyes of the intended audience. There is some risk to the terrorist because security forces
26 | have time to react and may opt to use force to resolve the incident, especially if few or no
27 | innocent lives are involved.
28 |

29 | h. Raids or Attacks on Facilities. Armed attacks on facilities are usually
30 | undertaken for one of three purposes: to gain access to radio or television broadcast
31 | capabilities in order to make a statement; to demonstrate the government's inability to
32 | secure critical facilities or national symbols; or to acquire resources (e.g., robbery of a
33 | bank or armory).
34 |
35 |
36 |
37 |



Port facilities are particularly vulnerable to terrorist sabotage.

1
2
3
4 i. Sabotage. The objective in most sabotage incidents is to demonstrate how
5 vulnerable society is to terrorist actions. Industrialized societies are more vulnerable to
6 sabotage than less highly developed societies. Utilities, communications, and
7 transportation systems are so interdependent that a serious disruption of any one affects
8 all of them and gains immediate public attention. Sabotage of industrial or commercial
9 facilities is one means of identifying the target while making a statement of future intent.
10 Military facilities and installations, information systems, and information infrastructures
11 may become targets of terrorist sabotage.

12
13 j. Hoaxes. Any terrorist group that has established credibility can employ a
14 hoax with considerable success. A threat against a person's life causes that person and
15 those associated with that individual to devote time and effort to security measures. A
16 bomb threat can close a commercial building, empty a theater, or delay an aircraft flight
17 at no cost to the terrorist. False alarms dull the analytical and operational efficiency of
18 key security personnel, thus degrading readiness.

19
20 k. Use of Special Weapons and Weapons of Mass Destruction (WMD).
21 ~~Chemical weapons have been used by terrorists to date and there is potential for the use~~
22 ~~of both chemical and biological weapons in the future. Terrorists have employed~~
23 ~~chemical and biological weapons in the past, and some terrorist organizations will seek to~~
24 ~~employ all types of CBRNE weapons when they can obtain them.~~ These types of
25 weapons, relatively cheap and easy to make, could be used in place of conventional
26 explosives in many situations. The potential for mass destruction and the deep-seated
27 fear most people have of chemical and biological weapons could be attractive to a group
28 wishing to make the world take notice. Although an explosive nuclear device is
29 acknowledged to be beyond the reach of most terrorist groups, a chemical or biological
30 weapon or a radiological dispersion device using nuclear contaminants is not. The
31 technology is simple and the cost per casualty (for biological weapons in particular) is
32 extremely low — much lower than for ~~conventional or~~ nuclear explosives. This situation

1 could change as the competition for headlines increases. Increasing availability of
2 CBRNE material, components, and weapons raises the specter of terrorists using these
3 weapons in an attack against civilian populations or military facilities. Many chemical-
4 biological (C-B) weapons ingredients are commercially available, and there are numerous
5 reports throughout Europe of fissile material availability on the black market. This raises
6 the possibility not only of terrorist use of nuclear weapons, but of radiological bombs that
7 use fissile material to contaminate targets. Terrorists have attempted to obtain industrial
8 radiological sources to be used in a “dirty bomb” scenario. This would result in panic,
9 adverse economic effects, and potential health risks.

10
11 i. Environmental Destruction. Although this tactic has not been widely used,
12 the increasing accessibility of sophisticated weapons to terrorists has the potential to
13 threaten damage to the environment. ~~Examples would be intentional dumping of~~
14 ~~hazardous chemicals into a city’s water supply, the destruction of an oil tanker, the~~
15 ~~intentional burning of an oil field, or the use of exotic insects and/or plants to poison or~~
16 ~~destroy a nation’s food supplies. Potential examples include intentional dumping of~~
17 ~~hazardous chemicals into the public water supply, the destruction of oil tankers causing~~
18 ~~ecological harm, destroying oil fields, or poisoning a nation’s food supplies. The use of~~
19 ~~exotic insects, animals, or plants to poison or destroy the food supply or ecosystem is a~~
20 ~~potential low cost terror weapon.~~

21
22 —m. Use of Technology and Weapons of Mass Effects (WME). Technology has
23 important implications for the terrorist threat faced by DOD personnel. Infrastructure
24 technologies provide attractive targets for terrorists who can apply a range of rudimentary
25 and advanced attack techniques to disrupt or undermine confidence in a range of systems.
26 WME create large scale detrimental (lethal or non-lethal, including economic) effects to
27 military or civilian operations. Key elements of the national infrastructure, such as
28 transportation, telecommunications, energy, banking, public health, and water supply are
29 becoming increasingly dependent on computerized systems and linkages.

30
31 —(1) These systems provide targeting opportunities for adversaries who
32 possess even limited technological capabilities, and who have the ability to identify
33 critical system choke points. Terrorists can apply computer generated attacks or more
34 traditional means such as bombs or physical destruction to cause system-wide
35 malfunctions. Interdependencies of systems, such as power and transportation,
36 exacerbate this vulnerability. Significant disruption of power grids can have a
37 devastating impact on air traffic control, railway operations, port operations, and
38 emergency services such as fire and/or rescue and police. Attacks such as power outages
39 also impact a wide segment of the population, command significant media attention and
40 consequently provide an effective means for the terrorist to reach a “captive” audience.

41
42 —(2) A range of technologies can also be employed effectively by terrorists
43 to conduct operations. Although terrorists to date have not demonstrated significant
44 technological innovation and have largely relied on traditional attack methods such as
45 bombing, hostage taking, and assaults, several factors point to an increased likelihood of
46 greater use of more sophisticated technologies. First, the wide scale proliferation of

1 military weapons and technologies that has followed the collapse of the former Soviet
2 Union has increased the range of weapons available on international arms markets.
3 Stand-off weapons such as shoulder-fired anti-aircraft weapons, light anti-tank weapons
4 which have been used in attacks against US targets in the past, are attractive means of
5 attack for a terrorist since they reduce vulnerability and increase chance of escape.
6 Increased availability of more powerful explosives (such as the plastic explosive Semtex,
7 which is easily concealed and difficult to detect), when combined with more
8 sophisticated timing devices, detonators, and fuses, have provided the terrorist with much
9 more lethal bombing capabilities.

10
11 ——— (3) Increasing availability of CBRNE material, components, and weapons raises
12 the specter of terrorists using these weapons in an attack against civilian populations or
13 military facilities. Many chemical-biological (C-B) weapons ingredients are
14 commercially available, and there are numerous reports throughout Europe of fissile
15 material availability on the black market. This raises the possibility not only of terrorist
16 use of nuclear weapons, but of radiological bombs that use fissile material to contaminate
17 targets.

18
19 ——— (4) A range of commercially available technologies can dramatically
20 enhance terrorist operational capability. These include communications equipment,
21 encryption capabilities, surveillance equipment, weapons, a range of computer and
22 information management technologies, weapons components, and the Internet. The
23 ability to acquire or adapt technologies can give terrorists an edge in choosing targets and
24 conducting attacks as well as significantly expanding their range of attack options.

25
26 ——— (5) Technological advances also enhance antiterrorism capabilities. Recent
27 research and development efforts have focused on the following areas:

- 28 (a) Detection of explosives and other weapons;
- 29 (b) Detection of, and defense against, C-B agents;
- 30 (c) Physical protection (e.g., alarms, barriers, access control);
- 31 (d) Incident response; and
- 32 (e) Data analysis and dissemination.

33
34
35
36
37
38 ——— (6) Explosive detection technologies can be applied for both airline security and
39 for fixed facilities. They detect physical, chemical, or mechanical properties of bombs
40 using a variety of technologies, from x-rays and radio waves to dogs and “sniffer”
41 technologies.

42
43
44 ——— (7) Detection of C-B agents poses a significant challenge, since almost anyone
45 that can brew beer can manufacture a biological agent, and toxic chemicals are widely
46 available on the commercial market. Laser technologies have shown promise in

1 detection of C-B agents, and research and development work on personnel protective
2 equipment and vaccines is being pursued aggressively.

3
4 ——— (8) A range of technologies is currently being investigated to enhance physical
5 protection capabilities. Access control technologies, which include a range of personnel
6 identification systems, metal detectors, and closed circuit surveillance devices are being
7 researched and fielded on a regular basis. Barrier technologies are also being fielded, and
8 enhancements in building design to enhance bomb resistance are being incorporated into
9 new and existing DOD buildings in high threat areas.

10
11 (9) Incident response technologies are developed to assist in responding to
12 assaults on facilities, hostage taking, or criminal activities. Incident response activities
13 include disrupting the attack, defending targets, aiding persons injured in an attack,
14 rescuing hostages, and apprehending attackers. A broad range of technologies are
15 included in this category such as fiber optic and low light camera technologies, highly
16 accurate sensors, nonlethal weapons, incapacitating agents, and software tools for
17 profiling terrorists and supporting response planning.

18
19 ——— (10) Effective data dissemination is a key measure to improving antiterrorism
20 awareness and preparedness. The rapid evolution of information technology has
21 facilitated the transfer of accurate terrorist profiles (to include photographs) and the
22 ability to transfer the information anywhere in the world quickly. Other key AT data,
23 such as protection technologies and procedures, can also be transmitted to field locations
24 quickly and effectively. Recent efforts have reduced barriers between agencies on the
25 fusion and dissemination of AT data.

26 27 **3. Terrorist Groups**

28
29 a. A terrorist group's selection of targets and tactics is also a function of the
30 group's affiliation, level of training, organization, and sophistication. For years, security
31 forces categorized terrorist groups according to their operational traditions — national,
32 transnational, and international. National groups operated within the boundaries of a
33 single nation. Transnational groups operated across international borders. International
34 groups operated in two or more nations and were usually assumed to receive direction
35 and support from a foreign government. Historically, Tterrorist groups have also been
36 are categorized by government affiliation to help security planners anticipate terrorist
37 targets and their sophistication of intelligence and weaponry. Three general terrorism
38 categories are shown in Figure II-1.



Figure II-1. Categories of Terrorist Groups

1
2
3
4
5 b. While the three categories broadly indicate the degrees of sophistication that
6 may be expected, it is important to examine each terrorist group on its own terms. The
7 vast funds available to some narco-terrorists afford them the armaments and technology
8 rivaling some nation-states. ~~Messianic~~ Religious cults or organizations have features
9 from all three of the listed categories. They may be “non-state-supported” (e.g., Japan’s
10 Aum Shinrikyo cult or ~~the Abdul-Ramman group that perpetrated the World Trade~~
11 ~~Center bombing)~~ Al-Qaeda, “state-supported” (e.g., extremist factions of HAMAS who
12 believe violence serves their concept of religious servitude), or “state-directed” (e.g.,
13 Hizballah is both the “Party of God” and a religious ~~cult~~-organization that employs
14 violence in support of both religion and politics).

16 4. Terrorist Organization

18 a. Despite their diversity in motive, sophistication, and strength, terrorist
19 organizations share a basic structure as depicted in figure II-2.

21 b. At the base, underlying conditions such as poverty, corruption, religious conflict
22 and ethnic strife create opportunities for terrorists to exploit. Some of these conditions
23 are real and some manufactured. Terrorists use these conditions to justify their actions
24 and expand their **base of** support. The belief that terror is a legitimate means to address
25 such conditions and effect political change is a fundamental problem enabling terrorism
26 to develop and grow.

28 c. The international environment defines the boundaries within which terrorists’
29 strategies take shape. ~~As a result of~~ Freer, more open borders, ~~as well as sympathetic~~

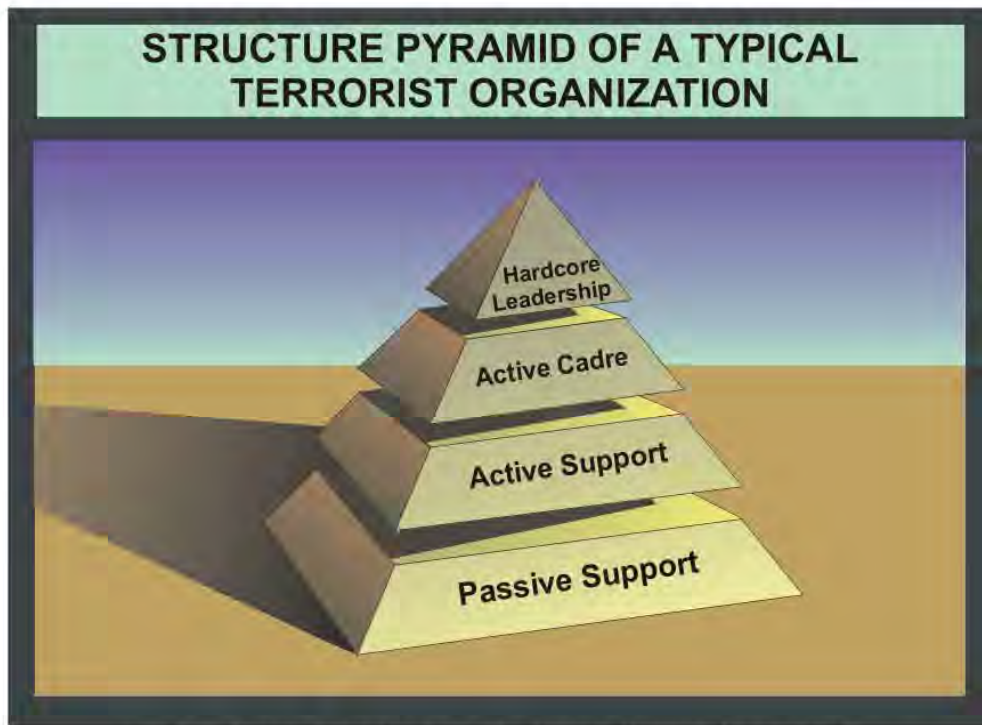


Figure II-2. Structure Pyramid of a Typical Terrorist Organization

1 | ~~governments –this environment unwittingly~~ provides terrorists access to havens,
2 | capabilities, and other support ~~to terrorists. But access alone is not enough. Terrorists~~
3 | ~~must have a physical base from which to operate.~~ Whether through ignorance, inability,
4 | or intent, states around the world still offer havens—both physical (e.g., safe houses,
5 | training grounds) and virtual (e.g., reliable communication and financial networks)—that
6 | terrorists need to plan, organize, train, and conduct their operations. Once entrenched in
7 | a safe operating environment, the organization can begin to solidify and expand. The
8 | terrorist organization’s structure, membership, resources, supporters, and security
9 | determine its capabilities and reach.

10 |
11 | d. At the top of the structure, the terrorist leadership provides the overall
12 | direction and strategy that links all these factors and thereby breathes life into a terror
13 | campaign. The leadership becomes the catalyst for terrorist action. The loss of the
14 | leadership can cause many organizations to collapse. Some groups, however, are more
15 | resilient and can promote new leadership should the original fall or fail. Still others have
16 | adopted a more decentralized organization with largely autonomous cells, making our
17 | challenge even greater.

18 |
19 | e. While retaining this basic structure, the terrorist challenge has changed
20 | considerably over the past decade and likely will continue to evolve. Ironically, the
21 | particular nature of the terrorist threat faced today springs in large part from some of our
22 | past successes.

23 |

1 f. In the 1970s and 1980s, the United States and its allies combated generally
2 secular and nationalist terrorist groups, many of which depended upon active state
3 sponsors. While problems of state sponsorship of terrorism continue, years of sustained
4 counterterrorism efforts, including diplomatic and economic isolation, have convinced
5 some governments to curtail or even abandon support for terrorism as a tool of statecraft.
6 The collapse of the Soviet Union—which provided critical backing to terrorist groups and
7 certain state sponsors — accelerated the decline in state sponsorship. Many terrorist
8 organizations were effectively destroyed or neutralized, including the Red Army Faction,
9 Direct Action, and Communist Combatant Cells in Europe, and the Japanese Red Army
10 in Asia. Such past successes provide valuable lessons for the future.

11
12 g. The end of the Cold War also saw dramatic improvements in the ease of
13 transnational communication, commerce, and travel. Unfortunately, the terrorists
14 adapted to this new international environment and turned the advances of the 20th
15 century into the destructive enablers of the 21st century.

16
17 h. ~~Al-Qaida~~~~Al-Qaeda~~ exemplifies how terrorist networks have twisted the
18 benefits and conveniences of our increasingly open, integrated, and modernized world to
19 serve their destructive agenda. The ~~al-Qaida~~~~Al-Qaeda~~ network is a multinational
20 enterprise with operations in more than 60 countries. Its camps in Afghanistan provided
21 sanctuary and its bank accounts served as trust fund for terrorism. Its global activities are
22 coordinated through the use of personal couriers and communication technologies
23 emblematic of our era —cellular and satellite phones, encrypted e-mail, Internet chat
24 rooms, videotape, and ~~CD-roms~~~~ROMs~~. Like a skilled publicist, Usama bin Laden and ~~al-~~
25 ~~Qaida~~~~Al-Qaeda~~ have exploited the international media to project his image and message
26 worldwide.

27
28 i. Members of ~~al-Qaida~~~~Al-Qaeda~~ have traveled from continent to continent with
29 the ease of a vacationer or business traveler. Despite our coalition’s successes in
30 Afghanistan and around the world, some ~~al-Qaida~~~~Al-Qaeda~~ operatives ~~have escaped~~
31 ~~remain at large~~ to plan additional terrorist attacks. In an age marked by unprecedented
32 mobility and migration, they readily blend into communities wherever they move.

33
34 j. They pay their way with funds raised through front businesses, drug
35 trafficking, credit card fraud, extortion, and money from covert supporters. They use
36 ostensibly charitable organizations and non-governmental organizations for funding and
37 recruitment. Money for their operations transferred surreptitiously through numerous
38 banks, money exchanges, and alternate remittance systems (often known as “hawalas”)
39 —some legitimate and unwitting, others not.

40
41 k. These terrorists are also transnational in another, more fundamental way —
42 their victims. ~~Besides US citizens,~~ the September 11 attacks murdered citizens from
43 Australia, Brazil, China, Egypt, El Salvador, France, Germany, India, Israel, Jordan,
44 Japan, Pakistan, Russia, South Africa, Switzerland, Turkey, the United Kingdom and
45 scores of other countries.

46

1 | l. As the al-QaidaAl-Qaeda network demonstrates, the terrorist threat today is
2 | mutating into something quite different from its predecessors. Terrorists can now use the
3 | take full advantage of technology to disperse leadership, training, and logistics not just
4 | regionally but globally. Establishing and moving cells in virtually any country is
5 | relatively easy in a world where more than 140 million people live outside of their
6 | country of origin and millions of people cross international borders every day daily.

7 |
8 | m. Furthermore, terrorist groups have become increasingly self-sufficient by
9 | exploiting the global environment to support their operations. Whether it is the
10 | Revolutionary Armed Forces of Colombia's involvement in the cocaine trade in
11 | Colombia, al-QaidaAl-Qaeda's profiting from the poppy fields in Afghanistan, or Abu
12 | Sayyaf's kidnapping for profit in the Philippines, terrorists are increasingly using
13 | criminal activities to support and fund their terror. In addition to finding sanctuary within
14 | the boundaries of a state sponsor, terrorists often seek out states where they can operate
15 | with impunity because the central government is unable to stop them. Such areas are
16 | found in the Americas, Europe, the Middle East, Africa, and Asia. More audaciously,
17 | foreign terrorists also establish cells in the very open, liberal, and tolerant societies that
18 | they plan to attack.

Al-QaidaAl-Qaeda a.k.a. Qa'idat al-Jihad

Established by Usama Bin Ladin in the late 1980s to bring together Arabs who fought in Afghanistan against the Soviet Union. Helped finance, recruit, transport, and train Sunni Islamic extremists for the Afghan resistance. Current goal is to establish a pan-Islamic Caliphate throughout the world by working with allied Islamic extremist groups to overthrow regimes it deems "non-Islamic" and expelling Westerners and non-Muslims from Muslim countries, particularly Saudi Arabia. Issued statement under banner of "the World Islamic Front for Jihad Against the Jews and Crusaders" in February 1998, saying it was the duty of all Muslims to kill US citizens, civilian or military, and their allies everywhere. Merged with Egyptian Islamic Jihad (Al-Jihad) in June 2001.

Al-QaidaAl-Qaeda probably has several thousand members and associates. Also serves as a focal point or umbrella organization for a worldwide network that includes many Sunni Islamic extremist groups, some members of al-Gama'a al-Islamiyya, the Islamic Movement of Uzbekistan, and the Harakat ul-Mujahidin.

Al-QaidaAl-Qaeda has cells worldwide and is reinforced by its ties to Sunni extremist networks. Was based in Afghanistan until Coalition forces removed the Taliban from power in late 2001. Al-QaidaAl-Qaeda has dispersed in small groups across South Asia, Southeast Asia, and the Middle East and probably will attempt to carry out future attacks against US interests.

Al-QaidaAl-Qaeda maintains moneymaking front businesses, solicits donations from like-minded supporters, and illicitly siphons funds from donations to Muslim charitable organizations. US efforts to block al-QaidaAl-Qaeda funding has hampered the group's ability to obtain money.

SOURCE: United States Department of State Patterns of Global Terrorism 2002
April 2003

5. Terrorist Targets

a. It is sometimes difficult for Americans to understand why terrorism seems to thrive in the environment that offers the least justification for political violence (e.g., democracies and ineffective authoritarian regimes). Equally puzzling is the relative absence of terrorism in those societies with totalitarian and effective authoritarian governments. The reasons for this apparent paradox can be summarized as being a matter of social control. The terrorist operates covertly. In societies where little is done without the knowledge of internal security agencies, covert activity for any appreciable period of time is difficult. The same principle applies to acquisition of weapons, communications equipment, and explosives. Another factor is public information. Because the terrorist's objectives usually include gaining the attention of a target audience through a violent act, the terrorist can easily be denied that objective in an environment where information media are tightly controlled. Finally, in controlled societies, the ability of terrorist organizations to create functional networks or to move funds within the financial system is severely hindered.

b. The reasons US interests are a target for so many terrorist groups around the world are complex and must be understood in order to effectively combat terrorism in the long term. One reason some terrorist groups target the United States and its citizens is ideological differences. The United States is a leading industrial power and the leading capitalist state. These reasons are enough to incite the animosity of some groups that are committed to different social systems.

c. Of greater importance is the perception that the US Government can dictate courses of action to other governments. Terrorists think that by pressuring the United States through acts of terror, the US Government will bring pressure to bear on the targeted government to comply with terrorists' demands. Although US influence is substantial in the world community, this is not a policy of the US Government.

d. Mere presence is another factor. Americans are all over the world in capacities ranging from diplomatic service to tourists. This availability makes targeting Americans easy even for relatively poorly trained non-state-supported groups. It also

TERRORISTS AND TOURISM

The most effective fear that the terrorist can generate for the tourist is that he will never arrive at his destination — or will never return home alive. Convinced of this, a supply of tourist visitors could suddenly dry up. Expensive tourist infrastructures, depending on a constant flow of customers — margins in the tourist industry are often surprisingly slender — then lie idle. The industry is very labor intensive so a considerable unemployment problem is created. . . . A pistol pointed at a hostage in an aircraft, then, could be a pistol pointed at a country's economic heart.

SOURCE: G. Norton, quoted in Chris Ryan, Tourism, Terrorism and Violence Research Institute for the Study of Conflict and Terrorism, September 1991

1 | ~~adds to the chances of Americans being killed or injured unintentionally. These same~~
2 | ~~considerations apply to members of the US military forces with the added factor of~~
3 | ~~“symbolic value.” The Armed Forces are clearly visible symbols of US projection of~~
4 | ~~power and presence; thus, terrorists find military personnel and installations appealing~~
5 | ~~targets.~~

6 |
7 | ~~— e. Terrorism is a major factor across the range of military operations. It attracts~~
8 | ~~a great deal of attention and few question its actual and potential capacity to kill and~~
9 | ~~destroy. The threat of terrorism in all operations is only one of many FP issues the~~
10 | ~~commander must consider. The same types of acts that gain attention in peacetime~~
11 | ~~military operations can hinder military operations in war (e.g., espionage, sabotage,~~
12 | ~~vandalism, or theft).~~

13 |
14 | ~~— f. In peacetime military operations, there is no definitive method of~~
15 | ~~differentiating terrorist acts from other violent crimes because the perpetrator’s intent~~
16 | ~~may be the only discriminator. A rule of thumb that can be applied is if the act is~~
17 | ~~obviously related to personal gain (robbery of money or high-value items) or personal~~
18 | ~~motivation (hatred, love, revenge) it is a crime, but probably not terrorist-related. On the~~
19 | ~~other hand, if the act appears to adversely affect military operations (communications~~
20 | ~~facilities, fuel storage areas) or has a high symbolic value (headquarters, particular~~
21 | ~~individuals), the crime probably has terrorist implications even when no claim is~~
22 | ~~forthcoming. Recognizing the difference between acts of violence and terrorist acts is~~
23 | ~~vital in order to properly understand the threat’s intent and determine required defensive~~
24 | ~~measures.~~



28 | *The American soldier is a symbol of US power and presence and is consequently*
29 | *an inviting target for terrorists.*
30 |

1
2
3
4 **65. Domestic Terrorism Against the Homeland**
5

6 ~~Terrorists have attacked on American soil since we became a Nation. Historically, though, the attacks were primarily committed by Americans, done infrequently, and on a generally small scale. Since the early 1990s, the scale of the attacks has increased, as has the presence of foreign terrorists (e.g., World Trade Center in 1993, Oklahoma city in 1995 [conducted by Americans], and the attacks of September 11, 2001).~~ a. ~~On September 11, 2001, our Nation learned a terrible lesson. American soil is not immune to foreign terrorists capable of mass murder and terror. The worst of these terrorists—and target number one in our war on terrorism—is the terrorist network Al-Qaeda. Yet the threat to America is not limited to Al-Qaeda nor to suicide hijackings of commercial aircraft. The threat is much broader, as we learned on October 4, 2001, when we discovered that a life-threatening biological agent—anthrax—was being distributed through the U.S. mail.~~

18
19 ~~ba. Unless we act to prevent it, a new wave of terrorism, potentially involving the world's most destructive weapons, looms in America's future. Today's t~~Terrorists can strike at any place, at any time, and with virtually any weapon. Securing the American homeland is a challenge of monumental scale and complexity. The 1995 bombing of the Murrah Federal Building in Oklahoma City and the attacks of 9/11 highlights the threat of ~~domestic~~ terrorist acts within the US designed to achieve mass casualties. ~~Both d~~Domestic terrorist groups (such as the National Alliance, the Aryan Nation, and the extremist Puerto Rican separatist group Los Macheteros), trans-national terrorist groups, and special interest extremist groups continue to pose a threat to the peace and stability of our country.

29
30 ~~e. The terrorist threat to America takes many forms, has many places to hide, and is often invisible. Our enemies seek to remain invisible, lurking in the shadows. And while Al-Qaeda remains America's most immediate and serious threat, other international terrorist organizations, as well as domestic terrorist groups, possess the will and capability to attack the United States.~~

35
36 ~~db. One fact dominates all domestic terrorist threat assessments: terrorists are strategic actors. They~~Terrorists choose their targets deliberately based on the weaknesses they observe in our defenses and in our preparations. They can balance the difficulty in successfully executing a particular attack against the magnitude of loss it might cause. They can monitor our media and listen to our policymakers as our Nation discusses how to protect itself - and adjust their plans accordingly. Where we insulate ourselves from one form of attack, they can shift and focus on another exposed vulnerability. We must defend ourselves against a wide range of means and methods of attack. ~~Our enemies are working to obtain chemical, biological, radiological, and nuclear weapons for the purpose of wreaking unprecedented damage on America.~~ Terrorists continue to employ conventional means of attack, while at the same time gaining expertise in less traditional

1 | means, such as attacks on computer, banking, and utility systems. Other terrorists are
2 | working to obtain chemical, biological, radiological, and nuclear weapons for the purpose
3 | of wreaking unprecedented damage on America. Our society presents an almost infinite
4 | array of potential targets that can be attacked through a variety of methods.

5 |
6 | ~~—e. The American people and way of life are primary targets of terrorists. Our~~
7 | ~~population and way of life, while the source of our Nation’s strength, is also a source of~~
8 | ~~inherent vulnerability. Our population is large, diverse, and highly mobile, allowing~~
9 | ~~terrorists to hide within our midst. Americans congregate at schools, sporting arenas,~~
10 | ~~malls, concert halls, office buildings, high-rise residences, and places of worship,~~
11 | ~~presenting targets with the potential for many casualties. Much of America lives in~~
12 | ~~densely populated urban areas, making our major cities conspicuous targets. Americans~~
13 | ~~subsist on the produce of farms in rural areas nationwide, making our heartland a~~
14 | ~~potential target for agroterrorism.~~

15 |
16 | ~~fc. Terrorist organizations groups have time on their side. They~~ can infiltrate
17 | organizations, groups, or geographic areas to wait, watch, and identify weaknesses and
18 | opportunities while it is much more difficult for us to do the same. This trait is made
19 | even more relevant by our reliance on habitual processes such as repetitiveness in
20 | training and in our daily lives.

21 |
22 | ~~gd. The US military organizes, trains, and equips forces primarily to conduct~~
23 | ~~combat operations. Inherent within the combat capabilities of the Services the military~~
24 | ~~rapidly responds to domestic emergencies or disasters and provides support to US civil~~
25 | ~~authorities for domestic emergencies, authorized law enforcement, and other activities.~~

26 |
27 | ~~—h. The Department of Defense cooperates with and provides support to civil~~
28 | ~~authorities directed by and consistent with laws, Presidential directives, executive orders,~~
29 | ~~and DOD policies and directives.e Military commanders are responsible to ensure that~~
30 | ~~DOD resources are used as directed and consistent with laws, Presidential directives,~~
31 | ~~executive orders, and DOD policies and directives, judiciously by adhering to the~~
32 | ~~following principles:~~

33 |
34 | ~~———— (1) Except in the case of immediate response (see chapter 1) when local~~
35 | ~~commanders can respond to save lives, prevent human suffering, or mitigate gross~~
36 | ~~property damage, DOD resources are provided only when response or recovery~~
37 | ~~requirements are beyond the capabilities of local, State, and Federal civil authorities and~~
38 | ~~when they are requested by a lead federal agency (LFA).~~

39 |
40 | ~~———— (2) DOD specialized capabilities (e.g., airlift and reconnaissance) are used~~
41 | ~~efficiently.~~

42 |
43 | ~~———— (3) The Secretary of Defense retains command of military forces providing civil~~
44 | ~~support.~~

45 |
46 | ~~———— (4) DOD components do not perform any function of civil government unless~~

1 ~~authorized.~~

2

3 ~~——— (5) Unless otherwise directed by the SecDef, or where provided for by law,~~

4 ~~military operations will have priority over civil support missions. (See JP 3-26, *Joint*~~

5 ~~*Doctrine for Homeland Security* for ~~detailed~~ guidance ~~to the Armed Forces~~ in the conduct~~

6 ~~of homeland security operations and JP 3-07.7, *Doctrine for Civil Support*, for guidance~~

7 ~~on military support to civil authorities.)in joint, multinational, and interagency~~

8 ~~environments.)~~

9

10

11

1
2
3
4
5
6
7
8
9
10
11
12
13
14
15
16
17
18
19
20
21
22
23

Intentionally Blank

1
2 CHAPTER III
3 INTELLIGENCE, COUNTERINTELLIGENCE, ~~AND~~ THREAT ANALYSIS AND
4 COUNTERSURVEILLANCE

5 *"... the dangers facing the United States today— ranging from chemical warfare to terrorism,*
6 *regional crises, and societal turmoil — are linked in unprecedented ways and frequently span*
7 *multiple countries or continents. Dealing with them therefore requires multiple intelligence*
8 *disciplines, along with the combined tools of diplomacy, law enforcement, and sometimes,*
9 *military force."**We made mistakes. Our failure to watchlist al-Hazmi and al-Mihdhar in a*
10 *timely manner – or the FBI's inability to find them in the narrow window of time afforded them*
11 *– showed systemic weaknesses and the lack of redundancy.*

12
13 **George J. Tenet, Director of Central Intelligence, CIA**
14 **(Testimony Delivered to the Senate Select Committee on Intelligence, January 28,**
15 **1998)Written Statement for the Record of the Director of Central Intelligence Before the**
16 **National Commission on Terrorist Attacks Upon the United States, April 14, 2004.**
17

18
19 **1. Intelligence and Counterintelligence**
20

21 a. Intelligence and Counterintelligence Support. Intelligence and
22 counterintelligence are critical in the development of the first line of defense in an AT
23 program. ~~A Strategic,~~ well-planned, proactive, systematic, all-source intelligence and
24 counterintelligence programs ~~is~~ are essential. The role of intelligence and
25 counterintelligence is to identify the threat, provide advance warning, and disseminate
26 critical information/intelligence in a usable form for the commander. Additionally,
27 counterintelligence provides warning of potential terrorist attacks and provides
28 information for CT operations. ~~This chapter provides the reader with the elements of the~~
29 ~~intelligence cycle that have particular importance in a viable AT program.~~ Effective
30 intelligence and counterintelligence support requires effort, planning and direction,
31 collection ~~and analysis,~~ processing and exploitation, analysis and production,
32 ~~investigations, and~~ dissemination and integration, and evaluation and feedback. The
33 entire process is important in providing decision makers with information and timely
34 warnings upon which to recommend AT FP actions.
35

36 b. Sources. The primary sources of intelligence and counterintelligence for the
37 AT program are open-source information, criminal records, government intelligence, and
38 local, state and federal information from continual liaison and if overseas, CI FP Source
39 Operations, see JP 2-01.2, Joint Doctrine, Tactics, Techniques and Procedures for
40 Counterintelligence Support to Operations, 7 May 2002. (See Figure III-1.)
41



Figure III-1. Sources of Intelligence and Counterintelligence

1
2
3
4
5
6
7
8
9
10
11
12
13
14
15
16
17

(1) Open-Source Information. This information is publicly available and can be collected, retained, and stored without special authorization. The news media are excellent open sources of information on terrorism. The news media report many major terrorist incidents and often include in-depth reports on individuals, groups, or various government counterstrategies. Government sources include congressional hearings; publications by Defense Intelligence Agency (DIA), Federal Bureau of Investigation (FBI), the Central Intelligence Agency (CIA), and DOS; and the national criminal justice reference services. Additionally, there are private data services that offer timely information on terrorist activities worldwide. Terrorist groups and their affiliates may also have manuals, pamphlets, and newsletters that reveal their objectives, tactics, and possible targets. Open sources are not a substitute for classified capabilities, but they can provide a valuable foundation and context for rapid orientation of the analyst and the consumer and for the establishment of collection requirements which take full advantage

1 of the unique access provided by classified sources.
2

3 (2) Criminal Records. Both military and civil law enforcement
4 agencies collect criminal records. Because terrorist acts are criminal acts, criminal
5 records are a major source for terrorist intelligence. Commanders must work through
6 established law enforcement liaison channels because the collection, retention, and
7 dissemination of criminal records are regulated. Local military criminal investigative
8 offices of the US Army Criminal Investigations Command (USACIDC), Naval Criminal
9 Investigative Service (NCIS), Air Force Office of Special Investigations (AFOSI), and
10 Headquarters, US Marine Corps, Criminal Investigations Division, maintain current
11 information that will assist in determining the local terrorist threat. See DOD Directive
12 5200.27 on proper handling of this information.
13

14 (3) Government Intelligence. The Community Counterterrorism
15 Board, which manages the Interagency Intelligence Committee on Terrorism under the
16 Director of Central Intelligence (DCI), is the organization that links all 60-plus federal
17 intelligence, defense and civilian agencies involved in counterterrorism.. These agencies
18 include the CIA (lead agency), DIA, National Security Agency, DOS, Department of
19 Justice (DOJ), FBI, the Department of Energy (DOE), the Department of Transportation
20 (DOT), United States Coast Guard (USCG), Federal Aviation Administration (FAA),
21 Federal Communications Commission, Department of Homeland Security (DHS), and
22 DOD. In response to the terrorist attacks of September 11, the terrorist Threat Integration
23 Center was created. This new center merges and analyzes terrorist-related information
24 collected domestically and abroad in order to form the most comprehensive possible
25 threat picture. It includes DOD representation. Lastly, the FBI has a national Joint
26 Terrorism Task Force (JTTF) which includes nearly 30 agencies, spanning the fields of
27 intelligence, public safety, and federal, state, and local law enforcement. The National
28 JTTF collects terrorism information and intelligence and funnels it to the 66 local and
29 state JTTFs. The DOD is represented at the national level and many of the state and local
30 JTTFs have Service representation from nearby military installations. Service
31 intelligence and counterintelligence production organizations that compile
32 comprehensive intelligence and counterintelligence from these agencies for distribution
33 on a need-to-know basis throughout the Services include: the Army Counterintelligence
34 Center; the ~~Navy Antiterrorism Alert Center~~Multiple Threat Alert Center; Headquarters,
35 US Marine Corps, Counterintelligence; and Headquarters, AFOSI. In combatant
36 commands, the J-2 is responsible for the integration of intelligence policy issues ~~aeross~~
37 ~~the command staff~~. The counterintelligence support officer (CISO) provides
38 counterintelligence interface among the combatant command, the component commands,
39 and the Joint Staff.
40

41 (4) Local Information. Other valuable sources of information are the
42 individual Service member, civil servant, family member, and individuals with regional
43 knowledge such as college faculty or members of cultural organizations. Local crime or
44 neighborhood watch programs can also be valuable sources of information and can serve
45 as a means to keep individuals informed in dispersed and remote areas. Intelligence
46 exchanges with local government agencies through cooperative arrangements can also

1 augment regional information.

2
3 c. Responsibilities of Intelligence Agencies and Activities

4
5 (1) General. The FBI is responsible for collecting and processing

Al-Qaida~~Al-Qaeda~~ a.k.a. Qa'idat al-Jihad

Established by Usama Bin Ladin in the late 1980s to bring together Arabs who fought in Afghanistan against the Soviet Union. Helped finance, recruit, transport, and train Sunni Islamic extremists for the Afghan resistance. Current goal is to establish a pan-Islamic Caliphate throughout the world by working with allied Islamic extremist groups to overthrow regimes it deems "non-Islamic" and expelling Westerners and non-Muslims from Muslim countries, particularly Saudi Arabia. Issued statement under banner of "the World Islamic Front for Jihad Against the Jews and Crusaders" in February 1998, saying it was the duty of all Muslims to kill US citizens, civilian or military, and their allies everywhere. Merged with Egyptian Islamic Jihad (AI-Jihad) in June 2001.

Al-Qaida~~Al-Qaeda~~ probably has several thousand members and associates. Also serves as a focal point or umbrella organization for a worldwide network that includes many Sunni Islamic extremist groups, some members of al-Gama'a al-Islamiyya, the Islamic Movement of Uzbekistan, and the Harakat ul-Mujahidin.

Al-Qaida~~Al-Qaeda~~ has cells worldwide and is reinforced by its ties to Sunni extremist networks. Was based in Afghanistan until Coalition forces removed the Taliban from power in late 2001. **Al-Qaida**~~Al-Qaeda~~ has dispersed in small groups across South Asia, Southeast Asia, and the Middle East and probably will attempt to carry out future attacks against US interests.

Al-Qaida~~Al-Qaeda~~ maintains moneymaking front businesses, solicits donations from like-minded supporters, and illicitly siphons funds from donations to Muslim charitable organizations. US efforts to block **al-Qaida**~~Al-Qaeda~~ funding has hampered the group's ability to obtain money.

SOURCE: United States Department of State Patterns of Global Terrorism 2002
April 2003

6 domestic terrorist information to protect the United States from terrorist attack.
7 Overseas, terrorist intelligence is principally a CIA responsibility, but the DOS, DIA, and
8 host nation (HN) are also active players. Military intelligence activities are conducted in
9 accordance with (IAW) Presidential Executive orders, Federal law, status-of-forces
10 agreements (SOFAs), MOUs, and applicable Service regulations.ril 2003

11
12 (2) Intelligence Activities.

13
14 (a) The combatant commander, through the ~~commander's~~ J-2,
15 Joint Intelligence Center, ~~and~~ the CISO, and in consultation with DIA, CIA, ~~embassy~~
16 ~~staff,~~ US country team, and applicable host-nation authorities, obtains intelligence and
17 counterintelligence specific to the operational area and issues intelligence and
18 counterintelligence reports, advisories, and assessments ~~to the units within the combatant~~
19 ~~command's control or operating within the combatant command's AOR~~. This network is

1 the backbone for communicating intelligence and counterintelligence information,
2 advisories, and warning of terrorist threats throughout the region.

3
4 (b) DODD 2000.12, *DeOD Antiterrorism (AT) Program*,
5 tasks the Secretaries of the Military Departments to ensure Service component commands
6 have the capability to collect, receive, evaluate, analyze, and disseminate all relevant data
7 on terrorist activities, trends, and indicators of imminent attack, and to develop the
8 capability to fuse suspicious activity reports from military security, law enforcement, and
9 counterintelligence organizations with national-level intelligence, surveillance, and
10 reconnaissance collection activities.

11
12 (c) DODD 5105.67, *Department of Defense*
13 *Counterintelligence Field Activity (DeOD CIFA)*, 2/19/2002 tasks the Secretaries of the
14 Military Departments to:

15
16 1. Support the DOD CIFA in implementing Presidential
17 Decision Directive/National Security Council-75, *U.S.-US Counterintelligence*
18 *Effectiveness, Counterintelligence for the 21st Century*, December 28, 2000, in integrating
19 the Defense Counterintelligence (CI) Program DOD-wide, and in overseeing the
20 appropriate functional aspects of the program.

21
22 2. Report all significant CI activities, including
23 investigations and operations, to the Director, DOD CIFA.

24
25 (d) DOD CIFA Antiterrorism Responsibilities:

26
27 1. Establish a threat analysis capability designed to
28 collect, fuse and analyze domestic law enforcement information with foreign intelligence
29 and counterintelligence information in support of the DOD CbT mission. As a
30 designated DOD law enforcement and counterintelligence activity, CIFA shall support
31 the efforts of the *DIA* Joint Intelligence Task Force for Combating Terrorism (*JITF-*
32 *CbT*), serving as the bridge between intelligence related to international terrorism and
33 domestic law enforcement information.

34
35 2. Maintain a domestic law enforcement database that
36 includes information related to potential terrorist threats directed against the Department
37 of Defense.

38
39 3. Support the ~~*JTF-CbT*~~*JITF-CT*, the combatant
40 commands, and the military Services in preparing threat assessments and advisories.

41
42 4. Conduct specific risk assessments in support of the
43 *Defense* Critical Infrastructure ~~Protection~~ Program. Identify and maintain a database of
44 critical DOD assets and infrastructure. This database shall include vulnerability
45 assessments of all DOD facilities.

46

1 5. Support DOD counterintelligence components in
2 preparing threat assessments by providing tailored analytical and data-mining services.

3
4 6. Establish and manage DOD Force Protection
5 Detachments at high-threat in-transit locations overseas, ensuring required
6 counterintelligence and force protection support is provided to DOD Elements transiting
7 these locations.

8
9 7. Assign DOD counterintelligence and criminal
10 investigative personnel to the National Joint Terrorism Task Force and designated Joint
11 Terrorism Task Forces within CONUS. Provide program oversight and coordination for
12 assigned counterintelligence assets and serve as the repository for information obtained.

13
14 8. Provide countersurveillance support to the combatant
15 commands upon request, subject to the approval of the Chairman of the Joint Chiefs of
16 Staff.

17
18 9. Provide a member to the DOD ATCC and
19 subcommittees as required, ~~pursuant to enclosure 3 of this Directive.~~

20
21 10. Assist the DIA in the execution of its diplomatic
22 security function. Such assistance shall include:

23
24 a. Representation at the National Security
25 Council's Overseas Security Policy Board and other related committees, subcommittees,
26 and working groups.

27
28 b. Support the DIA security assistance visits and
29 vulnerability assessments for all DOD Elements under the security responsibility of the
30 COMs.

31
32 (e) Each Military Department intelligence agency is
33 responsible for the following:

34
35 1. Provide overall direction and coordination of the
36 Service counterintelligence effort.

37
38 2. Operate a 24-hour operations center to receive and
39 disseminate worldwide terrorist threat information to and from the combatant command
40 J-2s, applicable Service staff elements, subordinate commands, and national agencies.

41
42 3. Provide Service commanders with information on
43 terrorist threats concerning their personnel, facilities, and operations.

44
45 4. With the FBI or host-nation authorities, investigate
46 terrorist incidents for intelligence, counterintelligence, and force protection aspects.

1
2
3
4
5
6
7
8
9
10
11
12

5. Provide terrorist threat information in threat briefings.

6. Conduct liaison with representatives from Federal, State, and local agencies as well as host-nation agencies to exchange information on terrorists.

7. Provide international terrorism summaries and other threat information to supported commanders. On request, provide current intelligence and counterintelligence data on terrorist groups and disseminate time-sensitive and specific threat warnings to appropriate commands.



Success in thwarting terrorist activities requires a coordinated intelligence effort from several US government agencies.

13
14
15
16

(f) Investigative Agencies. Service criminal investigative services (e.g., USACIDC, NCIS, AFOSI) collect and evaluate criminal information and disseminate terrorist-related information to supported installation and activity commanders as well as to the Service lead agency. As appropriate, criminal investigative elements also conduct liaison with local military police or security forces and civilian law enforcement agencies.

(g) Intelligence staff elements of commanders at all echelons will:

17
18
19
20
21
22
23
24
25
26
27
28
29
30
31
32
33
34

1. Promptly report all actual or suspected terrorist incidents, activities, and early warnings of terrorist attack to supported and supporting activities, the local counterintelligence office, and through the chain of command to the Service lead agency.

2. Initiate and maintain liaison with the security forces or provost marshal's office, local military criminal investigative offices, local counterintelligence offices, security offices, host-nation agencies, and (as required or

1 allowed by law or policy) other organizations, elements, and individuals.

2
3 3. In cooperation with the local counterintelligence
4 offices, develop and present terrorism threat awareness briefings to all personnel within
5 their commands.

6
7 (h) Law enforcement staff elements will be responsible for
8 the following:

9
10 1. Report all actual or suspected terrorist incidents or
11 activities to their immediate commander, supported activities, and Service lead agency
12 through established reporting channels.

13
14 2. Initiate and maintain liaison with local
15 counterintelligence offices and military criminal investigative offices.

16
17 3. Maintain liaison with Federal, host-nation, and local
18 law enforcement agencies or other civil and military AT agencies as appropriate.

19
20 (i) Installation, base, ship, unit, and port security officers will
21 be responsible for the following:

22
23 1. Report all actual or suspected terrorist incidents or
24 activities to their immediate commander, supporting military law enforcement office,
25 other supported activities, local counterintelligence office, and local military criminal
26 investigation office.

27
28 2. Conduct regular liaison visits with the supporting
29 military law enforcement office, counterintelligence office, and local criminal
30 investigation office.

31
32 3. Coordinate with the supporting military law
33 enforcement office and counterintelligence offices on their preparation and continual
34 updating of the threat assessments.

35
36 4. Assist in providing terrorism threat awareness training
37 and briefings to all personnel and family members as required by local situations.

38
39 d. Information Requirements. To focus the threat analysis, intelligence and
40 counterintelligence officers develop information requirements (IRs) for identifying
41 potential terrorist targets based on existing knowledge of an organization. Terrorist
42 group IRs are shown in Figure III-2.

1
2
3
4
5
6
7
8
9
10
11
12
13



Figure III-2. Information Requirements

2. Threat ~~Assessment~~ Analysis

a. ~~Terrorist threat analysis is a continual process of compiling and examining all available information in order to identify terrorist targeting of US interests. A vulnerability analysis is a continual process of compiling and examining information on the security posture of a facility. The threat analysis is then paired with the facility's vulnerability analysis to create the threat and vulnerability assessment. Threat analysis is an essential step in identifying probability of terrorist attack. To enhance this capability to collect and analyze information from many sources, DIA maintains a terrorism data base on the Migration Defense Intelligence Threat Data System and the combatant command's J-2; the CISO, in consultation with DIA, focuses this data base information and regional information toward the intelligence and counterintelligence needs specific to the security of the command. Country threat assessments and information about terrorist organizations, biographies, and incidents in the database are disseminated to the commands and Services.~~ Terrorism threat analysis is a continual process of compiling and examining all available information concerning potential terrorist activities by terrorist groups that could target the DOD Components or the DOD Elements and Personnel. A threat analysis shall review the factors of a terrorist group's existence, capability, intentions, history, and targeting, as well as the security environment within which friendly forces operate. Threat analysis is an essential step in identifying probability of terrorist attack and results in a terrorism threat assessment. A vulnerability assessment is an evaluation to determine the vulnerability to a terrorist attack against an installation, unit, exercise, port, ship, residence, facility or other site. The threat assessment, and vulnerability assessment are then utilized with the criticality assessment to provide the commander with the basis for their risk management decisions. The commander must determine which assets require the most protection and where future expenditures are required to minimize risk of attack or lessen the severity of the outcome of an attack. To enhance this capability, which requires the collection and analysis of information from, many sources DIA maintains a terrorism database on the Migration Defense Intelligence Threat Data system. The combatant command's J-2, the CISOs, in consultation with DIA, focuses this database information and regional information toward the intelligence and counterintelligence needs specific to the security of the command. Country threat assessments and information about terrorist organizations, biographies, and incidents in the database are disseminated to the commands and services. Commands at all echelons then augment or refine the DIA's analyses to focus on their area of interest. This process is operative across the range of military operations, promotes coordination between all levels of the intelligence, counterintelligence, and law enforcement communities, ~~broadens acquisition channels,~~ and enhances timely distribution of information to the supported commander.

(1) Several factors complicate intelligence and counterintelligence collection and operations. The small size of terrorist groups, coupled with their mobility and cellular organization, make it difficult to identify the members. Unlike other criminals, terrorist cadres often receive training in counterintelligence and security measures from foreign intelligence agencies or other terrorists. Additionally, the traditional orientation of police organizations is toward individual criminals, while

1 military intelligence organizations focus on conventional forces. It is worth nothing that
2 the terrorist attacks against the Office of the Program Manager-Saudi Arabian National
3 Guard in 1995, Khobar Towers in 1996 and the USS Cole in 1998 all occurred when
4 those areas were in THREATCON Bravo. In fact, the THREATCON was lowered from
5 Charlie to Bravo approximately 45 days prior to the attack against Khobar Towers.
6 Terrorist activity, therefore, requires some degree of reorientation for police and military
7 intelligence and counterintelligence collection and operations.

8
9 (2) The ability of an intelligence system to provide critical and timely
10 information to the user depends not only on efficient collection and processing, but also
11 on the ability to organize, store, and rapidly retrieve this information. This capability,
12 coupled with early warning, careful observation, and assessment of threat activity,
13 enhances the probability of accurately predicting the types and timing of terrorist attacks.

14
15 (3) Commanders must carefully exercise judgment in estimating both
16 the existing terrorist threat and the need for changes in antiterrorism measures. See
17 Appendix A.

18
19 b. Having obtained a threat analysis, the commander and staff proceed to
20 complete the threat assessment by conducting the vulnerability (Appendix B) and
21 criticality (Appendix C) and ~~vulnerability (Appendix B)~~ assessments.

22
23 c. Drills and Exercises. Multi-echelon wargaming of possible terrorist attacks is

- There were at least four separate terrorist identity databases at State, CIA, Department of Defense, and FBI. None were interoperable or broadly accessible.
- There were dozens of watchlists, many haphazardly maintained.
- There were legal impediments to cooperation across the continuum of criminal and intelligence operations. It was not a secret, we all understood it, but little action was taken by anyone to create a common arena of criminal and intelligence data that we all could access.

But most profoundly we lacked a government wide capability to integrate foreign and domestic knowledge, data, operations, and analysis.

Warning is not good enough without the structure to put it into action.

- We all understood Bin Ladin's intent to strike the homeland but were unable to translate this knowledge into an effective defense of the country.
- Doing so would have complicated the terrorists' calculation of the difficulty in succeeding in a vast open society that was, in effect, unprotected on September 11.

During periods of heightened threat, we underlook smart, disciplined actions, but ultimately all of us must acknowledge that we did not have the data, the span of control, the redundancy, the fusion, or the laws in place to give us the chance to compensate for the mistakes that will be made in any human endeavor. This is not a clinical excuse – 3,000 people died. In the end, one thing is clear. No matter how hard we worked – or how desperately we tried – it was not enough. The victims and the families of 9/11 deserve better.

1 the best test, short of an actual incident, to analyze the ability of an installation, base,
2 ship, unit, airfield, or port to respond. Drills and exercises test suspected vulnerabilities
3 and AT measures. These exercises and drills also train the staff as well as reaction force
4 leadership and help maintain a valid threat assessment by identifying and adjusting to
5 changing threat capabilities as well as ~~installation, base, ship, unit, or port~~ known
6 vulnerabilities.

7 8 3. Countersurveillance

9
10 a. Countering terrorist surveillance successfully necessitates commanders and
11 security planners to understand the purpose of terrorist surveillance, know what terrorists
12 look for, and know how they conduct surveillance operations. With this basic knowledge,
13 commanders can then implement protective countermeasures, comply with DOD
14 standardized reporting procedures, and in the end deter, detect, disrupt, and defend against
15 future attacks.

16
17 b. Vulnerability assessment. Terrorists conduct surveillance to determine a target's
18 suitability for attack by assessing the capabilities of existing security systems and discerning
19 weaknesses for potential exploitation. Terrorists closely examine security procedures, such
20 as shift changes, access control, and roving patrols; citizenship of security guards; models
21 and types of locks; presence of closed-circuit cameras; and guard dogs. After identifying
22 weaknesses, terrorists plan their attack options at the point or points of greatest vulnerability.

23
24 c. Terrorist surveillance techniques. The basic methods of surveillance are
25 "mobile" and "fixed" (or static).

26
27 (1) Mobile surveillance entails active participation by the terrorists or
28 operatives conducting surveillance, usually following as the target moves. Terrorists conduct
29 mobile surveillance on foot, in a vehicle, or by combining the two. Mobile surveillance
30 usually progresses in phases from a stakeout, to a pick up and then through a follow phase
31 until the target stops. At this point operatives are positioned to cover logical routes to enable
32 the surveillance to continue when the target moves again.

33
34 (2) Terrorists conduct fixed or static surveillance from one location to
35 observe a target, whether a person, building, facility, or installation. Fixed surveillance often
36 requires the use of an observation point to maintain constant, discreet observation of a
37 specific location. Terrorists establish observation posts in houses, apartments, offices, stores,
38 or on the street. A mobile surveillance unit, such as a parked car or van, can also serve as an
39 observation post. Terrorists often park outside a building, facility, or installation to observe
40 routines of security and personnel coming and going. Terrorists also use various modes of
41 transportation to include buses, trains or boats or move by foot to approach and observe
42 installations.

43
44 d. Protective countermeasures. The incorporation of visible security cameras,
45 motion sensors, working dog teams, random roving security patrols (varying size, timing, and
46 routes), irregular guard changes, and active searches (including x-ray machines and explosive

1 detection devices) of vehicles and persons at entry points will improve a facilities' situational
2 awareness and present a robust force protection posture that dramatically inhibits terrorist
3 surveillance efforts. The emplacement of barriers, roadblocks, and entry mazes that are
4 covered by alert security forces will provide additional deterrence as these measures increase
5 standoff and improve security force reaction time in the event of an attack. The
6 implementation of unannounced random security measures such as 100% identification of all
7 personnel entering the facility / installation, conducting inspections and searches of personnel
8 and vehicles, and visible displays of vehicles mounted with crew served weapons will
9 increase uncertainty and thus the risk of failure in the minds of terrorists.

10
11 e. Surveillance detection. Because terrorists must conduct surveillance--often over
12 a period of weeks, months, or years--detection of their activities is possible. Regardless of
13 the level of expertise, terrorists invariably commit mistakes. Knowing what to look for and
14 to be able to distinguish the ordinary from the extraordinary are keys to successful
15 surveillance detection. For these reasons, overt surveillance detection in its most basic form
16 is simply watching for persons observing personnel, facilities, and installations.

17
18 (1) The objectives of overt surveillance detection measures are to record
19 the activities of persons behaving in a suspicious manner and to provide this information in a
20 format useable by the appropriate law enforcement or intelligence officials. It is important to
21 note that overt surveillance detection emphasizes the avoidance of interpersonal
22 confrontations with suspicious individuals unless exigent situations necessitate otherwise.
23 Depending upon the circumstances or trends, commanders and senior law enforcement
24 officials in coordination with intelligence experts through installation threat working groups
25 may determine the need for more specialized covert countersurveillance measures to assure
26 installation protection.

27
28 (2) For surveillance detection efforts to achieve positive results, military
29 police/security forces should immediately report incidents of surveillance and suspicious
30 activities by providing detailed descriptions of the people, the times of day, the locations, the
31 vehicles involved, and the circumstances of the sightings to their respective criminal
32 investigative services or counterintelligence elements for incorporation into reports such as
33 Air Force Talon or the Naval Criminal Investigative Service Suspicious Incident Report. The
34 incident reports are important pieces of information that over time combined with other
35 similar sightings allow investigators to assess the level of threat against a specific facility,
36 installation, or geographic region.

37
38 (3) The emphasis of surveillance detection is on indicators and warnings
39 of terrorist surveillance activities. Surveillance detection efforts should focus on recording,
40 then reporting incidents similar to the following:

41
42 (a) Multiple sightings of the same suspicious person,
43 vehicle, or activity, separated by time, distance, or direction.

44
45 (b) Possible locations for observation post use.
46

1 community at large. For those occasions when the indicators of terrorist surveillance
2 continue despite well executed overt security countermeasures the objectives should be to
3 provide detailed reports of the indicators of surveillance to the appropriate law enforcement
4 agency or intelligence activity. As reports of suspicious activity increase and the trends
5 clearly indicate pre-operational terrorist surveillance, it may be necessary for commanders in
6 coordination with senior law enforcement and intelligence officials to implement more
7 sophisticated, uniquely-tailored countersurveillance solutions and assets to investigate the
8 circumstances. Specialized countersurveillance assets should be coordinated and vetted by
9 forwarding requests through the chain of command via pre-determined service or combatant
10 command request procedures.
11
12
13

1
2
3
4
5
6
7
8
9
10
11
12
13
14
15
16
17
18
19
20
21
22

Intentionally Blank

1
2
3

CHAPTER IV LEGAL CONSIDERATIONS

~~"US forces will act unilaterally and in concert with security partners, using all means authorized by the President and the Congress to counter international terrorism at home and abroad." To defeat terrorists we will support national and partner nation efforts to deny state sponsorship, support, and sanctuary to terrorist organizations. We will work to deny terrorists safe havens in failed states and ungoverned regions. Working with other nations' military and other governmental agencies, the Armed Forces help to establish favorable security conditions and increase the capabilities of partners. The relationships developed in these interactions contribute to a global antiterrorism environment that further reduces threats to the United States, its allies, and its interests.~~

National Military Strategy of the United States of America, 1997 2004

4 **1. Authority**

5
6 a. Criminal Actions. Terrorist acts committed in the US or committed outside
7 the US against US persons or property are federal crimes whether committed during
8 peacetime or in military operations. Most terrorist acts are federal crimes whether
9 committed during peacetime or in military operations. By definition, terrorists do not
10 meet the four requirements necessary for combatant status (wear uniforms or other
11 distinctive insignia, carry arms openly, be under command of a person responsible for
12 group actions, and conduct their operations in accordance with the laws of war). Only
13 combatants can legitimately attack proper military targets. For this reason, captured
14 terrorists are not afforded the protection from criminal prosecution attendant to prisoner
15 of war status. ~~However, Article III of the 1949 Geneva Conventions, which requires that~~
16 ~~noncombatants be treated in a humane manner, also applies to captured terrorists.~~
17 However, detained terrorist will be treated humanely, as outlined in appropriate
18 regulations, and consistent with the Geneva Conventions.

19
20 b. Jurisdiction. Most terrorist acts may be prosecuted as criminal acts violating
21 local criminal, state, federal, or international laws. In an internationally recognized war
22 or hostilities short of war (regional or global), terrorists can also be tried under military
23 jurisdiction by either a court-martial, if applicable, or military commission. In peacetime
24 military operations, most terrorist acts are federal crimes. This is also true in police
25 actions to maintain a legitimate government. However, in an internationally recognized
26 war or hostilities short of war (regional or global), terrorists can be tried under local
27 criminal law or under military jurisdiction by either a court-martial or military
28 commission.

29
30 c. Commander's Authority. A commander's responsibility and authority
31 accountability to enforce security measures to protect persons and property is paramount
32 during any level of conflict. Commanders ~~must coordinate should confer~~ with their legal
33 advisers to determine the extent of their authority to combat terrorism.

1 **2. Limits of Military and Intelligence Support to Civil Authorities**
2

3 a. General. The fundamental restriction on the use of the military in law
4 enforcement is contained in the Posse Comitatus Act (PCA), (18 USC 1385). However,
5 several of the exceptions to the PCA are relevant to DOD's contribution to the fight
6 against terrorism. The Posse Comitatus Act does not apply to the navy and Marine Corps
7 as a matter of law. However, DOD directives and Secretary of the Navy instructions
8 apply similar restrictions pursuant to 10 USC 375. Similarly, the USCG retains law
9 enforcement authority in accordance with 14 USC 89 and its assignment to DHS.

10
11 (1) Constitutional Exceptions. The President, based on his inherent
12 authority as the Executive, has the authority to use ~~the military~~ forces in cases of
13 emergency and to protect ~~federal functions and property~~ national security. ~~In the case of~~
14 ~~civil disturbances, which may result from a terrorist act, military commanders may rely~~
15 ~~on this authority, however, the employment of active duty military forces in domestic~~
16 ~~civil disturbances may be authorized only by the President through an Executive order~~
17 ~~directing the Secretary of Defense to act in a specified civil jurisdiction under specific~~
18 ~~circumstances.~~

19
20 (2) Immediate Response. Immediate Response. Any form of
21 immediate action taken by a DOD component or military commander to assist civil
22 authorities or the public to save lives, prevent human suffering, or mitigate great property
23 damage under imminently serious conditions occurring where there has not been any
24 declaration of major disaster or emergency by the President or attack. Immediate
25 Response is that action authorized to be taken by a military commander or by responsible
26 officials of other DOD Agencies to provide support to civil authorities to prevent human
27 suffering, save lives, or mitigate great property damage. Under these circumstances,
28 support elements must advise the DOD Executive Secretary (EXECSEC) through
29 command channels by the most expeditious means available and seek approval or
30 additional authorizations. The EXECSEC will notify SecDef, the Chairman of the Joint
31 Chiefs of Staff (CJCS), and any other appropriate officials. Any commander or DOD
32 official acting under "Immediate Response" authority shall advise the Joint Director of
33 Military Support (JDOMS) through command channels by the most expeditious means
34 available and shall seek approval or additional authorization as needed (see Figure IV-1).
35

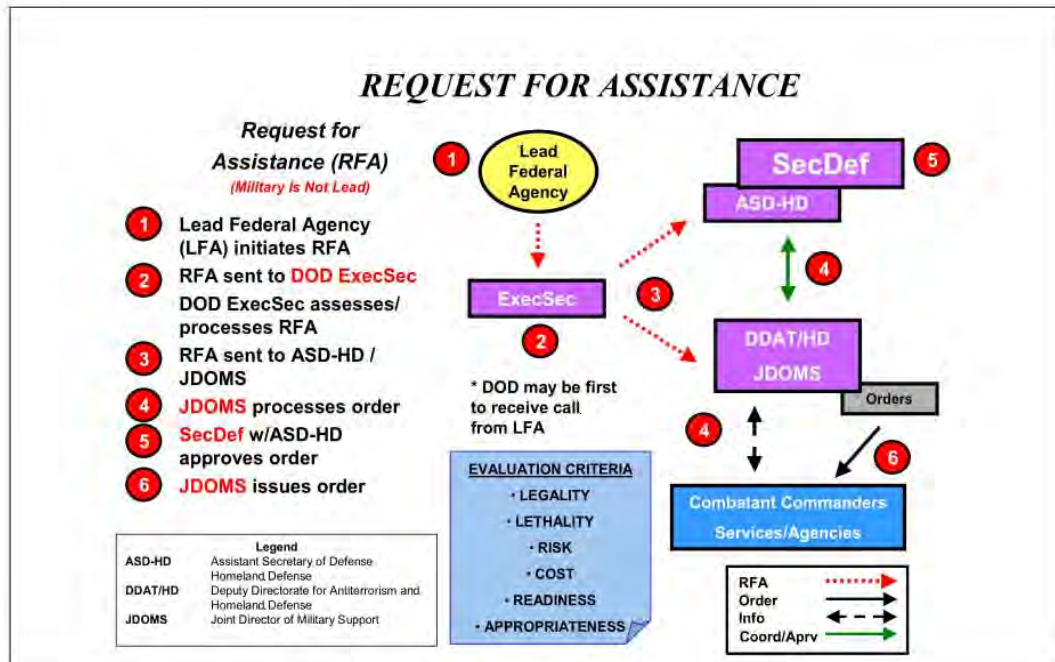


Figure IV-1 Request for Assistance

1
2
3
4
5
6
7
8
9
10
11
12
13
14
15
16
17
18
19
20
21
22
23
24
25
26
27
28

(a) In the event of imminent serious conditions resulting from any civil emergency or attack, all military commanders are authorized to respond to requests from the civil sector to save lives, prevent human suffering, or limit mitigate great property damage. This immediate assistance by commanders will not take precedence over their combat and combat support missions, nor over the survival of their units. Military commanders will notify the DOD Executive Agent JDOMS through their senior commander by the most expeditious means and seek guidance for continuing assistance whenever DOD resources are committed under Immediate Response circumstances.

(b) Immediate Response is situation-specific and may or may not be associated with a declared or undeclared disaster. These actions do not supplant established DOD plans for providing support to civil authorities. Commanders may use Immediate Response authority to assist in the rescue, evacuation, and emergency medical treatment of casualties, the maintenance or restoration of emergency medical capabilities, and the safeguarding of public health. They may provide emergency explosive ordnance disposal (EOD) service and use military working dog (MWD) teams to that end or to aid in locating lost persons. Commanders may also assist with the emergency restoration of essential public services and utilities. This may include fire fighting, water supplies, communications facilities, transportation means, electrical power, and fuel. They may also consider providing immediate assistance to assist public officials in emergency clearance of debris, rubble, and explosive ordnance from public facilities and other areas to permit rescue or movement of people and restoration of essential services. Commanders should recognize, however, that this is not a blanket provision to provide assistance. Such requests are time-sensitive and should be received from local government officials within 24 hours following completion of a damage assessment.

1 Commanders will always consider the impact that providing immediate response would
2 have on their military mission requirements and not jeopardize them.

3
4 (c). When a calamity or extreme emergency renders it dangerous to
5 wait for instructions from the proper military department, a commander may take
6 whatever action the circumstances reasonably justify. However, the commander must
7 comply with the following:

8
9 1 Document all facts and surrounding circumstances to
10 meet any subsequent challenge of impropriety.

11
12 2 Retain military response under the military chain of

Immediate Response

Requests for an immediate response (i.e., any form of immediate action taken by a DoQD Component or military commander to save lives, prevent human suffering, or mitigate great property damage under imminently serious conditions) may be made to any Component or Command. The DoQD Components that receive verbal requests from civil authorities for support in an exigent emergency may initiate informal planning and, if required, immediately respond as authorized in DoQD Directive 3025.1. Civil authorities shall be informed that verbal requests for support in an emergency must be followed by a written request. As soon as practical, the Component or Command rendering assistance shall report the fact of the request, the nature of the response, and any other pertinent information through the chain of command to the DoQD Executive Secretary, who shall notify the Secretary of Defense, the Chairman of the Joint Chiefs of Staff, and any other appropriate officials. If the report does not include a copy of the civil authorities' written request, that request shall be forwarded to the DoQD Executive Secretary as soon as it is available.

DODD 3025.15, Feb.18, 1997

13 command.

14
15 3 Limit military involvement to the minimum demanded
16 by necessity.

17
18 (3) Statutory Exceptions. 10 USC §§ 331-334 (Sec. 331. Federal aid
19 for State governments; Sec. 332. Use of militia and armed forces to enforce Federal
20 authority; Sec. 333. Interference with State and Federal law; Sec. 334. Proclamation to
21 disperse)-~~are the primary statutory exceptions pertinent to terrorism scenarios~~. A terrorist
22 incident may well qualify as a civil disturbance. Triggering these statutes permits the
23 active component to take on law enforcement function, subject to policy considerations.
24 Additional statutory exceptions to some lesser known statutes that contain exceptions to
25 the PCA are:

26
27 (a) To assist the Department of Justice in cases of offenses against
28 the President, Vice President, members of Congress, the Cabinet, a Supreme Court
29 Justice, or an "internationally protected person." (18 USC §§ 351, 1116, 1751).

1 (b) To assist the Department of Justice in enforcing 18 USC § 831,
 2 dealing with prohibited transactions involving nuclear materials. This statute specifically
 3 authorizes the use of DOD assets to conduct arrests and searches and seizures with
 4 respect to violations of the statute in cases of “emergency,” as defined by the statute.
 5

6 (c) 18 USC § 382 allows the Department of Defense to assist the
 7 Department of Justice in enforcing 18 USC § 175 & 2332, during an emergency situation
 8 involving chemical or biological WMD. DOD support in WMD situations also appears
 9 in 50 USC §§ 2311- 2367, Weapons of Mass Destruction Act of 1996. These statutes
 10 specifically authorize the use of DOD assets and in **very limited** situations provide
 11 authorization for the Department of Defense to arrest, search and seize.
 12

13 ~~— b. Although statutory exceptions allow the use of military forces in some contexts,~~
 14 ~~prior to committing their forces for these purposes, commanders shall consult with their~~
 15 ~~judge advocates and refer to applicable DOD and Service Directives, including DODD~~
 16 ~~3025.1, Military Support to Civil Authorities (MSCA),” DODD 3025, Military Assistance~~
 17 ~~for Civil Disturbances (MACDIS),” DODD 3015.15, Military Assistance to Civil~~
 18 ~~Authorities, and DODD 5525.2 DOD Cooperation with Civilian Law Enforcement~~
 19 ~~Officials.”~~

20 ~~b. Vicarious Liability. Commanders at all echelons should be aware of the legal~~
 21 ~~principle of vicarious liability in planning and implementing antiterrorist measures. This~~
 22 ~~principle imposes indirect Legal responsibility upon commanders for the acts of~~
 23 ~~subordinates or agents. For example, willful failure on the part of the commander or a~~
 24 ~~subordinate to maintain a trained and ready reaction force as required by regulation,~~
 25 ~~could be construed as an act taking the commander out of the protected position found in~~
 26 ~~being an employee of the Federal Government; thus making the commander subject to a~~
 27 ~~civil suit by any hostages injured. Civil or criminal personal liability may result from~~
 28 ~~unlawful acts, negligence, or failure to comply with statutory guidance by subordinates or~~
 29 ~~agents. With the increasing number of civilian contract personnel on military~~
 30 ~~installations and the sophistication of terrorist organizations, commanders should pay~~
 31 ~~particular attention to meeting regulatory requirements and operating within the scope of~~
 32 ~~their authority. The legal principle of vicarious liability, long established in the civilian~~
 33 ~~community, has only recently applied to the military community. In this right, the~~
 34 ~~command legal adviser has become increasingly important to the commander in planning,~~
 35 ~~training and operational phases of the antiterrorist program.~~
 36

37 **~~3. Jurisdiction and Authority for Handling Terrorist Incidents~~**

38
 39 ~~a. Jurisdictional Status of Federal Property in the United States, its Territories,~~
 40 ~~and its Possessions. In determining whether a Federal or State law is violated, it is~~
 41 ~~necessary to look not only to the substance of the offense but to where the offense occurs.~~
 42 ~~In many cases, the location of the offense will determine whether the State or Federal~~
 43 ~~Government will have jurisdiction to investigate and prosecute violations. There are four~~
 44 ~~categories of Federal territorial jurisdiction: exclusive, concurrent, partial, and~~
 45 ~~proprietary. These are shown in Figure IV-2 and discussed below:~~
 46

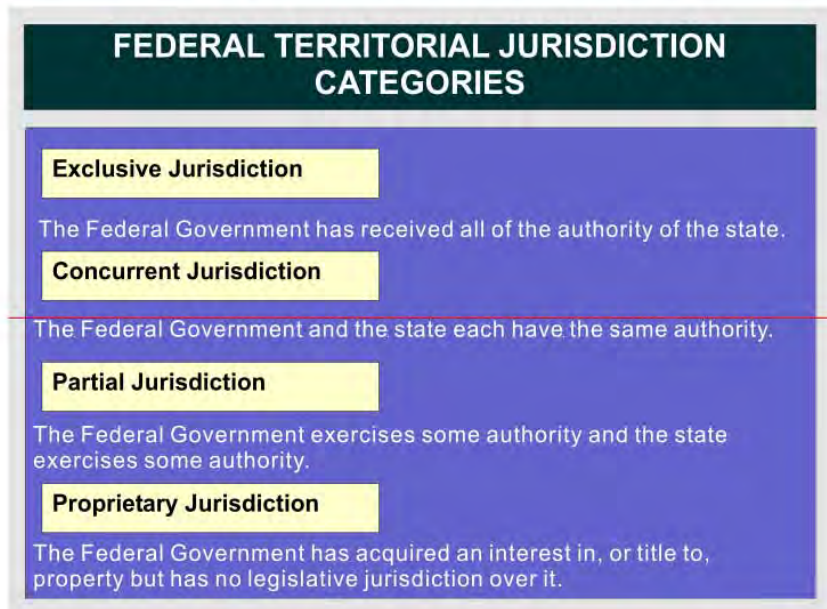


Figure IV-2. Federal Territorial Jurisdiction Categories.

1
2
3
4
5
6
7
8
9
10
11
12
13
14
15
16
17
18
19
20
21
22
23
24
25
26
27
28
29

~~———— (1) Exclusive jurisdiction means that the Federal Government has received, by whatever method, all of the authority of the state, with no reservations made to the State except the right to serve criminal and civil process. In territory that is under the exclusive jurisdiction of the United States, a State has no authority to investigate or prosecute violations of state law. However, the Assimilative Crimes Act (18 USC 13) allows the Federal Government to investigate and prosecute violations of state law that occur within the special maritime and territorial jurisdiction of the United States.~~

~~———— (2) Concurrent jurisdiction means that the Federal Government and the State each have the right to exercise the same authority over the land, including the right to prosecute for crimes. In territory that is under the concurrent jurisdiction of the United States and a State, both sovereigns have the authority to investigate or prosecute violations of Federal their respective laws. In addition, the Federal Government may prosecute violations of State law under the Assimilative Crimes Act.~~

~~———— (3) Partial jurisdiction refers to territory where the Federal Government exercises some authority, and the State exercises some authority beyond the right to serve criminal and civil process, usually the right to tax private parties. In territory that is under the partial jurisdiction of the United States, a State has no authority to investigate or prosecute violations of State law, unless that authority is expressly reserved. The Federal Government may, however, prosecute violations of state law under the Assimilative Crimes Act.~~

~~———— (4) Proprietary jurisdiction means that the Federal Government has acquired an interest in, or title to, property but has no legislative jurisdiction over it. In territory that is under the proprietary jurisdiction of the United States, the United States~~

1 ~~has the authority to investigate and prosecute non-territory-based Federal offenses~~
2 ~~committed on such property, such as assault on a Federal officer. This authority does not~~
3 ~~extend to investigations and prosecution of violations of State laws under the~~
4 ~~Assimilative Crimes Act and Federal Crimes Act of 1970. The State has the authority to~~
5 ~~investigate and prosecute violations of State law that occur on such territory.~~

6
7 ~~— b. Federal Authority in the United States, its Territories, and its Possessions.~~
8 ~~Several Federal criminal statutes apply to terrorist activities committed in the US or~~
9 ~~against US nationals or interests abroad. Some deal with conduct that is peculiar to~~
10 ~~terrorism, and others prescribe conduct that is criminal for anyone but in which a terrorist~~
11 ~~may engage to accomplish his or her purposes. The Assimilative Crimes Act will allow~~
12 ~~the Federal Government to investigate and prosecute violations of State law regarding~~
13 ~~terrorist acts or threats that occur within the exclusive, concurrent, or partial jurisdiction~~
14 ~~of the United States, thereby giving the Federal Government investigative and~~
15 ~~prosecutorial jurisdiction over a wide range of criminal acts. Once a violation of Federal~~
16 ~~law occurs, the investigative and law enforcement resources of the FBI and other Federal~~
17 ~~enforcement agencies become available, and prosecution for the offense may proceed~~
18 ~~through the Office of the United States Attorney General.~~

19
20 ~~— c. Federal and State Concurrent Authority. In some cases, terrorist acts may be~~
21 ~~violations of State law as well as Federal law. In this situation, both State and Federal~~
22 ~~enforcement authorities have power under their respective criminal codes to investigate~~
23 ~~the offense and to institute criminal proceedings. If a terrorist act is a violation of both~~
24 ~~Federal and State law, then the Federal Government can either act or defer to the State~~
25 ~~authorities depending on the nature of the incident and the capabilities of local~~
26 ~~authorities. Even where the Federal Government defers to State authorities, it can~~
27 ~~provide law enforcement assistance and support to local authorities on request. The~~
28 ~~choice between Federal or State action is made by the prosecuting authority. However,~~
29 ~~successive prosecutions are possible even where Federal and State law proscribe~~
30 ~~essentially the same offense, without contravening the Fifth Amendment prohibition~~
31 ~~against double jeopardy. Two relevant factors regarding law enforcement responsibility~~
32 ~~for a given incident are:~~

33
34 ~~— (1) The capability and willingness of State or Federal authorities to act.~~

35
36 ~~— (2) The importance of the State or Federal interest sought to be~~
37 ~~protected under the criminal statute.~~

38
39 ~~— d. Jurisdictional Authority. The matrix in Appendix J, “Jurisdictional Authority~~
40 ~~for Handling Terrorist Incidents,” provides a summary of FBI, host nation, and~~
41 ~~commanding officer authority and jurisdiction in investigating or resolving terrorist~~
42 ~~incidents.~~

43 44 **43. Federal Agencies and the Military**

45
46 DOD forces and installations are subject to the DOD FPCON System, which is similar

1 | in structure to the HSAS, but based on slightly different criteria for substantially different
2 | target. Knowledge of HSAS is beneficial in coordinating with civilian authorities.
3 |

4 | a. Overview. The primary Federal organizations dealing with terrorism
5 | management are the National Security Council (NSC), Homeland Security Council
6 | (HSC), DOS, DOJ, and the Department of Homeland Security (DHS).
7 |

8 | b. The National Security Council
9 |

10 | (1) The NSC formulates US policy for the President on terrorist threats
11 | that endanger US interests.
12 |

13 | (2) NSC's Counterterrorism & National Preparedness Policy
14 | Coordination Committee (PCC). This committee is comprised of representatives from
15 | State, Justice, Department of Defense, Chairman, Joint Chiefs of Staff, CIA, and FBI.
16 | The PCC has four standing subordinate groups to coordinate policy on specific areas
17 | relating to responding to terrorism. When the NSC is advised of the threat of a terrorist
18 | incident or actual event, the appropriate subordinate group will convene to formulate
19 | recommendations for the Counterterrorism and Preparedness PCC, who in turn will
20 | provide policy analysis for the Deputies Committee. The Deputies Committee then
21 | ensures that the issues brought before the Principals Committee and NSC are properly
22 | analyzed and prepared for a decision by the President.
23 |

24 | c. Department of Justice.
25 |

26 | (1) The DOJ is responsible for overseeing the Federal response to acts
27 | of terrorism within the United States. The US Attorney General, through an appointed
28 | Deputy Attorney General, makes major policy decisions and legal judgments related to
29 | each terrorist incident as it occurs. In domestic terrorism incidents the Attorney General
30 | will have authorization to direct an FBI-led Domestic Emergency Support Team (DEST),
31 | an ad hoc collection of interagency experts.
32 |

33 | (2) Federal Bureau of Investigation. The FBI has been designated the
34 | primary operational agency for the management of terrorist incidents occurring within the
35 | US. When a terrorist incident occurs, the lead official is generally the Special Agent in
36 | Charge (SAC) of the field office nearest the incident under supervision of the Director of
37 | the FBI. The FBI maintains liaison at each governor's office. Because of the presence of
38 | concurrent jurisdiction in many cases, the FBI cooperates with State and local law
39 | enforcement authorities on a continuing basis. In accordance with the Atomic Energy
40 | Act of 1954, the FBI is the agency responsible for investigating a threat involving the
41 | misuse of a nuclear weapon, special nuclear material, or dangerous radioactive material.
42 | For an emergency involving terrorism or terrorist acts involving chemical or biological
43 | weapons of mass destruction the FBI also has the lead. In these efforts, the FBI
44 | coordinates with the Department of Energy, the Department of Defense, the Nuclear
45 | Regulatory Commission, and the Environmental Protection Agency, as well as several
46 | States that have established nuclear, chemical, & biological and/or weapons of mass

1 destruction threat emergency response plans.

2

3 d. Department of State

4

5 (1) The DOS is the lead agency for responses to terrorism occurring
6 outside the United States, other than incidents on US flag vessels in international waters.
7 ~~The exception to this is on the Arabian Peninsula where the DOS and DOD signed an~~
8 ~~MOU transferring responsibility for terrorism against US interests there to the~~
9 ~~Department of Defense.~~ Once military force is directed, the President and SecDef
10 exercise control of the US military force.

11

12 (2) The Department of State has available worldwide a \$5 million
13 reward program to encourage vigilance and the reporting of possible terrorist actions.
14 Information on this program can be obtained through the Rewards for Justice web site:
15 <http://www.rewardsforjustice.net/>.

16



*Department of State embassies have the primary responsibility
for dealing with terrorism against Americans abroad.*

17

18

19

20

21 e. Department of Homeland Security

22

23 (1) The Department of Homeland Security leads the comprehensive
24 and unified effort to defend the nation against terrorism through analyzing threats;
25 guarding our borders and airports; safeguarding critical infrastructure, and coordinating
26 the response of our nation to future emergencies. Its strategic objectives in order of
27 priority are to:

28

29

30

31

32

33

34

(a) Prevent terrorist attacks within the United States;

(b) Reduce America's vulnerability to terrorism; and

(c) Minimize the damage and recover from attacks that do occur.

1 (2) DHS is responsible for assessing the vulnerabilities to threats
2 against the nation's critical infrastructure, including:

- 3
- 4 (a) Agriculture
- 5
- 6 (b) Food
- 7
- 8 (c) Water
- 9
- 10 (d) Public Health
- 11
- 12 (e) Emergency Services
- 13
- 14 (f) Government
- 15
- 16 (g) Defense Industrial Base
- 17
- 18 (h) Information and Telecommunications
- 19
- 20 (i) Energy
- 21
- 22 (j) Transportation
- 23
- 24 (k) Banking and Finance
- 25
- 26 (l) Chemical Industry
- 27
- 28 (m) Postal and Shipping
- 29

30 (3) The Department of Homeland Security merges under one roof the
31 capability to anticipate, preempt, and deter threats whenever possible, and the ability to
32 respond quickly when such threats do materialize by taking the lead in coordinating with
33 other federal, state, local, and private entities to ensure the most effective response.
34

35 ~~———— (4) DHS maintains a Homeland Security Advisory System (HSAS) to~~
36 ~~provide a comprehensive and effective means to disseminate information regarding the~~
37 ~~risk of terrorist acts to Federal, State, and local authorities and to the American people.~~
38 ~~This system is binding on the executive branch and voluntary to other levels of~~
39 ~~government and the private sector. It provides warnings in the form of a set of graduated~~
40 ~~threat conditions that increase as the risk of the threat increases. At each threat condition,~~
41 ~~Federal departments and agencies implement a corresponding set of protective measures~~
42 ~~to further reduce vulnerability or increase response capability during a period of~~
43 ~~heightened alert. There are five threat conditions, each identified by a description and~~
44 ~~corresponding color. From lowest to highest, the levels and colors are:~~

45 ~~———— (a) Low = Green. This condition is declared when there is a low~~
46

~~1 risk of terrorist attacks. Federal departments and agencies should consider the following
2 general measures in addition to the agency-specific Protective Measures they develop and
3 implement:~~

~~4
5 1. Refining and exercising as appropriate preplanned
6 Protective Measures;~~

~~7
8 2. Ensuring personnel receive proper training on the
9 Homeland Security Advisory System and specific preplanned department or agency
10 Protective Measures; and~~

~~11
12 3. Institutionalizing a process to assure that all facilities
13 and regulated sectors are regularly assessed for vulnerabilities to terrorist attacks, and all
14 reasonable measures are taken to mitigate these vulnerabilities.~~

~~15
16 (b) Guarded = Blue. This condition is declared when there is a
17 general risk of terrorist attacks. In addition to the Protective Measures taken in the
18 previous Threat Condition, Federal departments and agencies should consider the
19 following general measures in addition to the agency-specific Protective Measures that
20 they will develop and implement:~~

~~21
22 1. Checking communications with designated emergency
23 response or command locations;~~

~~24 2. Reviewing and updating emergency response
25 procedures; and~~

~~26
27 3. Providing the public with any information that would
28 strengthen its ability to act appropriately.~~

~~29
30 (c) Elevated = Yellow. An Elevated Condition is declared when
31 there is a significant risk of terrorist attacks. In addition to the Protective Measures taken
32 in the previous Threat Conditions, Federal departments and agencies should consider the
33 following general measures in addition to the Protective Measures that they will develop
34 and implement:~~

~~35
36 1. Increasing surveillance of critical locations;~~

1 ~~_____ 2. Coordinating emergency plans as appropriate with~~
2 ~~nearby jurisdictions;~~

3
4 ~~_____ 3. Assessing whether the precise characteristics of the~~
5 ~~threat require the further refinement of preplanned Protective Measures; and~~

6
7 ~~_____ 4. Implementing, as appropriate, contingency and~~
8 ~~emergency response plans.~~

9
10 ~~_____ (d) High = Orange. A High Condition is declared when there is a~~
11 ~~high risk of terrorist attacks. In addition to the Protective Measures taken in the previous~~
12 ~~Threat Conditions, Federal departments and agencies should consider the following~~
13 ~~general measures in addition to the agency-specific Protective Measures that they will~~
14 ~~develop and implement:~~

15 ~~_____ 1. Coordinating necessary security efforts with Federal,~~
16 ~~State, and local law enforcement agencies or any National Guard or other appropriate~~
17 ~~armed forces organizations;~~

18 ~~_____ 2. Taking additional precautions at public events and~~
19 ~~possibly considering alternative venues or even cancellation;~~

20
21 ~~_____ 3. Preparing to execute contingency procedures, such as~~
22 ~~moving to an alternate site or dispersing their workforce; and~~

23
24 ~~_____ 4. Restricting threatened facility access to essential~~
25 ~~personnel _____ only.~~

26
27 ~~_____ (e) Severe = Red. A Severe Condition reflects a severe risk of~~
28 ~~terrorist attacks. Under most circumstances, the Protective Measures for a Severe~~
29 ~~Condition are not intended to be sustained for substantial periods of time. In addition to~~
30 ~~the Protective Measures in the previous Threat Conditions, Federal departments and~~
31 ~~agencies also should consider the following general measures in addition to the agency-~~
32 ~~specific Protective Measures that they will develop and implement:~~

33
34 ~~_____ 1. Increasing or redirecting personnel to address critical~~
35 ~~emergency needs;~~

36

1 ~~2. Assigning emergency response personnel and pre-~~
 2 ~~positioning and mobilizing specially trained teams or resources;~~

3
 4 ~~3. Monitoring, redirecting, or constraining transportation~~
 5 ~~systems; and~~

6
 7 ~~4. Closing public and government facilities.~~

8
 9 (54) The United States Coast Guard

10
 11 (a) ~~The Commandant of the United States Coast Guard reports~~
 12 ~~directly to the Secretary of Homeland Security. However, the USCG also works closely~~
 13 ~~with the Under Secretary of Border and Transportation Security as well as maintain its~~
 14 ~~existing independent identity as a Military Service. Upon declaration of war or when the~~
 15 ~~President so directs, the Coast Guard would operate as an element of the Department of~~
 16 ~~Defense, consistent with existing law. The Commandant of the United States Coast~~
 17 ~~Guard reports directly to the Secretary of the Department of Homeland Security (DHS).~~
 18 ~~Under DHS, the USCG maintains its statutory status as one of the five Armed Forces and~~
 19 ~~conducts national security missions as a Military Service at all times. Upon declaration~~
 20 ~~of war by the Congress or when the President so directs (may be via the convenience of~~
 21 ~~any Executive Order) at any time, the USCG may be transferred to the Department of~~
 22 ~~Navy, consistent with United States Code. As Service Chief, the Commandant would~~
 23 ~~report directly to the Secretary of Navy. Importantly, all law enforcement authorities of~~
 24 ~~the USCG would transfer to the Secretary of the Navy, a civilian official. In addition,~~
 25 ~~posse comitatus still would not apply to the USCG. Memoranda of Agreement with~~
 26 ~~DOD exist for USCG support of Maritime Homeland Defense and the employment of~~
 27 ~~USCG capabilities and resources anywhere in the world in support of the National~~
 28 ~~Military Strategy.~~

29
 30 (b) The USCG is the LFA for Maritime Homeland Security ~~and~~
 31 ~~for Maritime Homeland Defense.~~ And, as such, since the Coast Guard is simultaneously
 32 and at all times both an armed force of the United States (14 USC 1), and a law
 33 enforcement agency (14 USC 89), and because terrorism can be classified as either a
 34 criminal act or an act of war, the USCG's capabilities are extremely relevant, valuable,
 35 and needed whether the threat is termed a military or terrorist attack. The Coast Guard's
 36 homeland security mission is to protect the US Maritime Domain and the US ~~Marine~~
 37 ~~Maritime~~ Transportation System and deny their use and exploitation by terrorists as a
 38 means for attacks on US territory, population, and critical infrastructure. Additionally,
 39 the ~~USCG Coast Guard~~ will prepare for and, in the event of attack, conduct emergency
 40 response operations. And, when directed, as the supported or supporting commander, the
 41 Coast Guard will conduct military homeland defense operations in its traditional role as a
 42 Military Service.

43
 44 (6) Federal Emergency Management Agency. As the lead agency for

1 consequence management, FEMA will manage and coordinate any Federal consequence
2 management response in support of State and local governments in accordance with its
3 statutory authorities. Additionally, FEMA will designate appropriate liaison and advisory
4 personnel for the FBI's Strategic Information and Operations Center and deployment with
5 the DEST, the Joint Operations Center, and the Joint Information Center.

6
7 f. Department of Energy. The DOE will provide scientific-technical personnel
8 and equipment in support of the LFA during all aspects of a nuclear / radiological WMD
9 terrorist incident.

10
11 g. Department of Transportation. DOT and/or the FAA are the federal agencies
12 responsible for responding to terrorist incidents on aircraft in flight within US
13 jurisdiction. The FAA has exclusive responsibility in instances of air piracy for the
14 coordination of law enforcement responses. The FBI maintains procedures, in
15 coordination with DOS and DOT, to ensure efficient resolution of terrorist hijackings.

16
17 h. Department of the Treasury

18
19 (1) The Department of the Treasury is responsible for preventing
20 unlawful traffic in firearms and explosives, and ~~by~~ for protecting the President and other
21 officials ~~from~~ from terrorist attacks.

22
23 (2) The Department of the Treasury, in cooperation with the
24 Department of State Rewards Program, has also launched a Counter-Terrorist Financing
25 Rewards Program for information leading to the dismantling of any system used to
26 finance a terrorist organization and for information leading to the arrest or conviction of
27 those who planned or aided in any act of terrorism against US persons or property.
28 Information about individuals or organizations that finance terrorists can be submitted ~~by~~
29 ~~calling 1-866-867-8300 within the US or~~ by contacting the nearest US embassy or
30 consulate if outside the US.

31
32 i. Director, Central Intelligence. The DCI is the lead in the Intelligence
33 Community for reducing vulnerabilities through aggressive foreign intelligence
34 collection, analysis, counterintelligence, and covert action in accordance with the
35 National Security Act of 1947 and EO 12333, UNITED STATES INTELLIGENCE
36 ACTIVITIES, 4 December 1981.

37
38 j. The Environmental Protection Agency (EPA). The EPA will provide
39 technical personnel and supporting equipment to the LFA during all aspects of a WMD
40 terrorist incident.

41
42 k. The Department of Health and Human Services (DHHS). DHHS is the
43 primary agency to plan and to prepare for a national response to medical emergencies
44 arising from the terrorist use of WMD. DHHS provides technical personnel and
45 supporting equipment to the LFA during all aspects of a terrorist incident.

1 I. Department of Defense

2
 3 (1) US Armed forces are prepared, on order, to attack terrorists or
 4 states involved in sponsoring terrorism. DOD Directive 2000.12, *DoQD Antiterrorism*
 5 *Program*, now prescribes that the ASD-(SO/LIC) has the lead role within the Department
 6 of Defense in countering domestic terrorist incidents where US forces may be used. The
 7 military is to maintain at least one domestic terrorism rapid response team composed of
 8 members of the Armed Forces and employees of the Department of Defense with the
 9 appropriate expertise. Active duty, National Guard, and Reserve forces possess
 10 expertise, training, and equipment that can support responses to chemical, biological, and
 11 radiological attacks at DOD installations and civilian communities. Expert and capable
 12 technical organizations and tactical units such as EOD teams, WMD CST teams, the
 13 Marine Corps Chemical Biological Incident Response Force, and the Army's Technical
 14 Escort Unit are involved in the development of response plans and procedures. These
 15 units can assist the FBI on-site in dealing with chemical and biological incidents, such as
 16 identification of contaminants, sample collection and analysis, limited decontamination,
 17 medical diagnosis and treatment of casualties and render safe procedure for WMD
 18 devices. JDOMS will serve as the executive agent for all domestic consequence support.
 19 However, the Attorney General, through the FBI, will remain responsible for
 20 coordinating:

21
 22 (a) The activities of all Federal agencies assisting in the resolution
 23 of the incident and in the administration of justice in the affected areas.

24
 25 (b) These activities with those state and local agencies similarly
 26 engaged. For the military planner in the United States, its territories and possessions, this
 27 relationship between DOJ and the Department of Defense requires the development of
 28 local memorandums of agreement or understanding, between the installation, base, unit,
 29 or port, and the appropriate local FBI office. This precludes confusion in the event of an
 30 incident. These local agreements, because of military turnover and reorganization,
 31 should be reviewed and tested annually. When updates or new MOUs/MOAs are
 32 accomplished coordinate with ASD(HD), as required.

33
 34 (2) It is DOD policy that:

35
 36 (a) The commanders at all levels have the responsibility and
 37 authority to enforce appropriate security measures to ensure the protection of DOD
 38 elements and personnel subject to their control and shall ensure the AT awareness and
 39 readiness of all DOD elements and personnel (including dependent family members)
 40 assigned or attached. Commanders must ensure appropriate AT protection and readiness
 41 of DOD elements and personnel while pursuing mission accomplishment.

42
 43 (b) The geographic combatant commanders' AT policies take
 44 precedence over all AT policies or programs of any DOD Component operating or
 45 existing in that command's AOR except for those under the security responsibility of a
 46 COM. All DOD ~~P~~ personnel traveling into a combatant commander's AOR will

1 familiarize themselves with all AOR-specific AT policies and comply.

2
3 (c) All DOD military, DOD civilians, DOD dependent family
4 members, and DOD contractors shall comply with theater, country, and special clearance
5 requirements before overseas travel.

6
7 (d) The commanders do not have the same legal responsibility to
8 provide security for DOD contractors as that provided for military forces or direct-hire
9 employees. Contractors remain private US citizens. The Department of Defense shall
10 assist the Department of State (DOS), where militarily feasible, in supporting efforts to
11 protect US citizens abroad. Contractors are required to contact the combatant command
12 to obtain, and comply with, the specific AT guidance for that particular area.
13 Commanders are required to offer AT training to contractors under the terms specified in
14 the contract. Contractors working within a US military facility or in close proximity of
15 US Forces shall receive incidentally the benefits of measures undertaken to protect US
16 Forces.

17
18 (e) Compliance with the "No Double Standard" policy on
19 dissemination of terrorist threat information is maintained.

20
21 **"No Double Standard Policy"**

22
23 **It is the policy of the U.S.US Government that no double standard shall exist regarding**
24 **the availability of terrorist threat information and that terrorist threat information be**
25 **disseminated as widely as possible. Officials of the U.S.US Government shall ensure**
26 **that information that might equally apply to the public is readily available to the public.**
27 **The Department of Homeland Security (DHS) is responsible for the release of**
28 **information to the public in the 50 United States, its Territories, and Possessions. The**
29 **Department of State (DoS) is responsible for release of terrorist threat information to**
30 **the public in foreign countries and areas. Threats directed against or affecting the**
31 **public (in the 50 United States, its Territories, and Possessions) or U.S.US citizens**
32 **abroad shall be coordinated with the DHS, the DoS, or the appropriate U.S.US**
33 **Embassy before release.**

34
35 **Commanders may disseminate terrorist threat information immediately to DoOD**
36 **Elements and Personnel for threats directed solely against the Department of Defense.**
37 **In foreign countries and areas, the threat information also shall be passed up the**
38 **chain of command to the lowest level that has direct liaison with the DoS or the**
39 **appropriate U.S.US Embassy(ies) (or for non-Combatant Commander assigned forces,**
40 **the U.S.US Defense Representative (USDR)). Within the 50 United States, its**
41 **Territories, and Possessions, the threat information shall be passed up the chain of**
42 **command to the lowest level that has direct liaison with the DHS. Except when**
43 **immediate notice is critical to the security of DoOD Elements and Personnel, the**
44 **appropriate DoS/U.S.US Embassy(ies)/DHS should be informed of the threat**
45 **information before release to DoD DOD Elements and Personnel. When immediate**
46 **notice is critical to the security of DoOD Elements and Personnel, Commanders may**
47 **immediately disseminate the information to, and implement appropriate AT protective**
48 **measures for, DoOD Elements and Personnel; and as soon as possible, inform the**
49 **DoS/U.S.US Embassies or the DHS, as appropriate, through the chain of command.**

50
51 **Commanders also shall inform the DoS/U.S.US Embassy(ies) or the DHS of any**
52 **changes to FPCON Levels or the security posture that significantly affects the host**

1 nation/U.S.US public. When FPCONs are changed based upon received threat
 2 information, both the threat information and notice of the changed FPCON shall be
 3 passed up the chain of command to the lowest level that has direct liaison with the
 4 DoS/U.S.US Embassy(ies) (or for non-Combatant Command assigned forces, the
 5 USDR) or the DHS. Coordination and cooperation with the DoS/U.S.US Embassy or the
 6 DHS in these cases is NOT a request for concurrence. Rather, it is informing the COM
 7 or Secretary of Homeland Security of the DoQD response to a given terrorist threat.
 8 Although the COM or Secretary of Homeland Security may not agree with the
 9 commander's assessment, the ultimate responsibility for protection of DoQD Elements
 10 and Personnel rests with the commanders in the chain of command. In areas outside
 11 the purview of the DHS, the DoS is responsible to determine whether to release the
 12 threat information to U.S.US citizens abroad and to deal with the sensitivities of the
 13 host nation(s). In the areas under the purview of the DHS, the Secretary of Homeland
 14 Security is responsible to determine whether to release the threat information to the
 15 U.S.US public.
 16
 17 **DODD 2000.12, DoQD Antiterrorism (AT) Program**
 18
 19

20 (3) The Assistant Secretary of Defense for Special Operations and
 21 Low-Intensity Conflict, under the Under Secretary of Defense for Policy (USD[P]), shall
 22 serve as the Principal Staff Assistant and civilian advisor to the USD(P) and the Secretary
 23 of Defense to provide overall direction and supervision for policy, program planning and
 24 execution, and allocation of resources for the AT activities of the Department of Defense.
 25

26 (4) Antiterrorism Coordinating Committee Senior Steering Group
 27 (ATCC-SSG). All Federal Agencies are required to take all steps necessary to reduce
 28 vulnerabilities to terrorist attacks. The ATCC and ATCC-SSG were established to meet
 29 this requirement and to support the Secretary of Defense and the Chairman of the Joint
 30 Chiefs of Staff in fostering cooperation and coordination for AT activities within the
 31 Department of Defense and among the Department of Defense and other US Government
 32 Agencies and organizations.
 33

34 (5) Military Authority. See Figure IV-2.
 35



Figure IV-3. Approval for Use of Military Force

1
2
3
4
5
6
7
8
9



Figure IV-2. Approval for Use of Military Force

1
 2 (a) Upon notification of Presidential approval to use military
 3 force, the Attorney General will advise the Director of the FBI, who will notify the SAC
 4 at the terrorist incident scene. The Attorney General will also notify the Secretary of
 5 Defense, who will advise the military commander. The military commander and the
 6 SAC will coordinate the transfer of operational control to the military commander.
 7 Responsibility for the tactical phase of the operation is transferred to military authority
 8 when the SAC relinquishes command and control of the operation and it is accepted by
 9 the on-site military commander. However, the SAC may revoke the military force
 10 commitment at any time before the assault phase if the SAC determines that military
 11 intervention is no longer required and the military commander agrees that a withdrawal
 12 can be accomplished without seriously endangering the safety of military personnel or
 13 others involved in the operation. When the military commander determines that the

1 operation is complete and military personnel are no longer in danger, command and
2 control will be promptly returned to the SAC.

3
4 (b) For ~~the military planner planning within in~~ the United States,
5 its territories, and its possessions, this relationship between the DOJ and Department of
6 Defense requires the development of local memorandums of agreement or understanding
7 between the installation, base, unit, or port and the appropriate local FBI office to
8 preclude confusion in the event of an incident. Because of military turnover and
9 reorganization, these local agreements should be reviewed and tested annually.

10 11 **4. Military Installation Commander's Responsibilities.**

12
13 PDD-39 directs federal agencies to ensure that the people and facilities under
14 their jurisdiction are protected against terrorism. This applies to DOD facilities both
15 abroad and in the US.

16
17 a. Domestic Incidents. Although the FBI has primary law enforcement
18 responsibility for terrorist incidents in the United States (including its possessions and
19 territories), installation commanders are responsible for maintaining law and order on
20 military installations. Plans should address the use of security forces to isolate, contain,
21 and neutralize a terrorist incident within the capability of installation resources. In the
22 United States, installation commanders will provide the initial and immediate response to
23 any incident occurring on military installations to isolate and contain the incident under
24 the direction of Commander, US Northern Command (USNORTHCOM). The FBI takes
25 the following steps:

26
27 (1) The senior FBI official will establish liaison with the command
28 center at the installation. If the FBI assumes jurisdiction, the FBI official will coordinate
29 the use of FBI assets to assist in resolving the situation (e.g., hostage rescue team, public
30 affairs assets).

31
32 (2) If the FBI assumes jurisdiction, the Attorney General will assume
33 primary responsibility for coordinating the Federal law enforcement response.

34
35 (3) If the FBI declines jurisdiction, ~~the senior military e~~Commander,
36 USNORTHCOM, as the Geographic Combatant Commander, will take action to resolve
37 the incident.

38
39 (4) Even if the FBI assumes jurisdiction, the military commander will
40 take immediate actions as dictated by the situation to prevent loss of life or to mitigate
41 property damage before the FBI response force arrives.

42
43 (5) In all cases, command of military elements remains within military
44 eChannels under the direction of Commander, USNORTHCOM.

45
46 (6) Response plans with the FBI and Service agencies should be

1 exercised annually at the installation and base level to ensure that the plans remain
2 appropriate.

3
4 b. Foreign Incidents.

5
6 (1) For foreign incidents, the installation unit commander's
7 responsibilities are the same as for domestic incidents — with the added requirement to
8 notify the HN and DOS. Notification to the DOS is made at the geographic combatant
9 commander level. In all theaters, existing plans provide guidance to the installation
10 commander regarding notification procedures. DOS has the primary responsibility for
11 dealing with terrorism involving Americans abroad. The installation's response is also
12 subject to agreements established with the HN. Such agreements, notwithstanding, the
13 *Standing Rules of Engagement* (CJCS Instruction 3121.01A), make it clear that the
14 commander retains the inherent right and obligation of self-defense ~~even in such~~
15 situations. In addition, under standing rules of engagement, the inherent right of self-
16 defense still applies in situations off base in foreign areas. If US forces (or members
17 thereof) are actually under attack, they retain the inherent right to respond with
18 proportionate, necessary force until the threat is neutralized. This is providing that the
19 host nation is unwilling or unable to respond to the threat in sufficient time or with the
20 appropriate means.

21
22 (2) The response to off-installation foreign incidents is the sole
23 responsibility of the HN. US military assistance, if any, depends on the applicable SOFA
24 or MOU and is coordinated through the US Embassy in that country. Military forces will
25 not be provided to host-nation authorities without a directive from the Department of
26 Defense that has been coordinated with the DOS. The degree of DOS interest and the
27 involvement of US military forces depend on the incident site, nature of the incident,
28 extent of foreign government involvement, and the overall threat to US security.

29
30 c. AT plans will:

31
32 (1) Be implemented by combatant commands, subunified commands,
33 JTFs, and component commands, IAW responsibilities and procedures established in
34 DODD 2000.12, *DeOD Antiterrorism (AT) Program*, DODI 2000.14, *DeOD Combating*
35 *Terrorism Program Procedures*, DODI O-2000.16, *DeOD ~~Combating Terrorism~~*
36 *Program Antiterrorism Standards*, and DOD 2000.12-H, *"Protection of DOD Personnel*
37 *and Activities Against Acts of Terrorism and Political Turbulence"; DeOD Antiterrorism*
38 *Handbook*;

39
40 (2) Be coordinated with and approved by the combatant commander or
41 a designated representative;

42
43 (3) Address the use of installation security forces, other military forces,
44 and host-nation resources (In many situations through agreement with host-nation
45 authorities, the plan will probably evolve into the installation having responsibility
46 "inside the wire or installation perimeter" and the HN having responsibility "outside the

1 wire or installation perimeter.” The wide dispersal of work areas, housing, support
2 [medical, child care, exchange, morale, welfare, and recreation], and utility nodes [power
3 grids, water plants] may require US responsibility for certain fixed-site security outside
4 the wire. This could be accomplished by a quick reaction force);

5
6 (4) Be coordinated by the combatant commander with both host-nation
7 and DOS officials; and

8
9 (5) Be exercised annually with host-nation resources to ensure that the
10 plan remains appropriate.

11
12 d. Although the installation commander may not have security responsibility
13 “outside the wire,” he still maintains a security interest. The installation commander
14 must include exterior terrain, avenues of approach, threat capabilities (possession of
15 stand-off weapons such as MANPADs or mortars), hazardous material storage in
16 proximity to the US Forces, and host nation security processes when developing security
17 plans for the installation, regardless of who provides exterior defense.
18

1
2
3

CHAPTER V
ANTITERRORISM PROGRAM; INSTALLATION, BASE, SHIP,
UNIT, AND PORT

"Night and day we chased an enemy who never awaited our approach but to harm us, was never found sleeping. Each tree, each hole, each piece of rock hid from our unseeing eyes a cowardly assassin, who, if undiscovered, came to pierce our breasts; but who fled or begged for mercy if we found him face to face."

Unknown Creole during the Haitian War for Independence, 1793

4
5
6

1. Overview of Program Concept

7
8
9
10
11
12
13
14
15
16
17
18
19
20
21

To meet the terrorist threat, an integrated and comprehensive AT program must be developed and implemented at every echelon of command. The program ~~is designed applies a wartime defensive mindset~~ to foster a protective posture in peacetime (i.e., units performing normal duties and serving in security assistance organizations, peacekeeping missions, or mobile training teams) ~~that will carry over to a wartime environment. Antiterrorist measures are intended to identify and reduce the risk of loss or damage of potential targets and to develop procedures to detect and deter planned terrorist actions before they take place, thereby reducing the probability of a terrorist event. The measures also encompass the reactive or tactical stage of an incident, including direct contact with terrorists to end the incident with minimum loss of life and property.~~ Antiterrorism programs should be incorporated and ~~integrated-coordinated~~ with DODD 3020, *Defense Critical Infrastructure Protection*, planning, coordination, community cooperation, and synchronization, which is required for every Service, installation, base, ship, unit, and port.

22
23
24
25
26
27
28
29
30
31
32
33

a. Command and Control. When terrorists attack DOD property or personnel, the National Military Command Center becomes the operations center for the Joint Staff and the Secretary of Defense. The incident command, control, and reporting responsibilities for ~~foreign~~ terrorist attacks on DOD property or personnel belong to the geographic combatant commander within whose AOR the attack has occurred. For assets under the control of a functional combatant commander (e.g., Commander, United States Special Operations Command) the functional combatant commander will coordinate with the affected geographic combatant commander for an appropriate division of responsibilities. Combatant command reporting will use the National Military Command System. ~~Domestic terrorist attacks on DOD property or personnel will be reported by the Service or agency in command of the targeted installation.~~

34
35
36
37
38
39
40

b. AT Program Elements. The AT program stresses deterrence of terrorist incidents through preventive measures common to all combatant commands and Services. In order to be successful, an AT program must be implemented in a methodical, coordinated manner. ~~Although an installation or unit may already have some elements in place, all program areas should be reviewed thoroughly on at least an annual basis.~~ It cannot be stressed enough that the AT Program is the ultimate responsibility of the commander or, in the case of a DOD Agency, the civilian equivalent. ~~As such he or~~

1 | ~~she~~ who has the authority and responsibility to alter or add to the AT program as deemed
2 necessary to accommodate the local situation. The AT Program elements described
3 below are merely the minimum recommended issues that should be addressed.

4
5 (1). All the elements and assessments of the Risk Management
6 process.

7
8 (a) Threat Assessment Standards. DOD Instruction 2000.16,
9 ~~DoOD~~ *Antiterrorism Standards*, provides guidance for conducting a threat assessment.

- 10
11 1. Development of AT Standards.
12
13 2. Coordination in Overseas Locations.
14
15 3. Application of DOD Terrorism Threat Analysis
16 Methodology.
17
18 4. Threat Information Collection and Analysis.
19
20 5. Threat Information Flow.
21
22 6. Potential Threat of Terrorist Use of WMD.

23
24 (b) In order to develop a site-specific ~~TA~~ *threat and*
25 *vulnerability assessment*, *Antiterrorism Officers (ATOs)* should refer to Combatant
26 Commander/Service directives. Consider using the Joint Staff J-34 *Joint AT program*
27 *manager's guide (JAT Guide)* ~~Installation Antiterrorism Program and Planning Tool~~
28 ~~(IPT)~~ as it shall facilitate what would otherwise be an extremely time consuming process.
29 The tool assists directly in the development of the installation's AT Plan, using pre-
30 incident FPCON measures and post-incident response measures.

31
32 (c) Criticality/Vulnerability/Risk Assessments. Much like the
33 threat assessment, multiple DODI 2000.16 standards address conducting vulnerability
34 assessment and program reviews. Some standards are program centric while others focus
35 on VAs. These standards are:

- 36
37 1. Comprehensive AT Program Development,
38 Implementation, and Assessment.
39
40 2. Antiterrorism Officers (ATOs).
41
42 3. AT Program Review.
43
44 4. VAs of Installations.
45
46 5. Pre-deployment AT Vulnerability Assessment.

1
2
3
4
5
6
7
8
9
10
11
12
13
14
15
16
17
18
19
20
21
22
23
24
25
26
27
28
29
30
31
32
33
34
35
36
37
38
39
40
41
42
43
44
45
46

(2) Planning.

(a) Planning Standards. DODI 2000.16 provides guidance for the development of AT related plans. Some standards deal with the specifics of plan writing, while others address FPCON issues. FPCONs are actually a derivative of the Operations and Intelligence fusion process. The following highlighted standards affect the AT planning process:

1. Development of FPCONS.
2. FPCON Measures Implementation.
3. Threat Response Measures.
4. Comprehensive AT Program for AOR.
5. Terrorism ~~TA~~ Threat and vulnerability assessment.
6. Physical Security Measures.
7. Terrorism Incident Measures.
8. Terrorist Consequence Management.

(b) Planning Integration. The JAT GUIDE, J-34 Installation Planning Tool, particularly Part III, provides an integrated approach to fulfilling the requirements of the above standards.

(3) Training.

(a) Training Standards. DOD Instruction 2000.16, *DeOD Antiterrorism Standards*, provides guidance-policy for the conduct of AT-related training to include eligibility, course content for training levels I through IV (basic through flag officer), and requirements for High Risk Personnel. The individual standards are:

1. General requirements for AT Training.
 2. Level I AT Awareness Training.
 3. AOR Specific Training Requirements for All DOD Personnel.
 4. Level II ATO Training.
 5. Level III and Level IV Command & Executive
-

1 | Management Training

2 |
3 | 56. Training for High Risk Personnel and High Risk
4 | Billets.

5 |
6 | (b) Filling In the Gaps. The DOD AT Standards give a
7 | reasonably complete picture of training requirements. The following discussion provides
8 | further analysis of the training process and the selection of a training source.

9 |
10 | (c) Analyze Training Requirements. Training is absolutely
11 | vital to the success of any AT program. The requirements for Levels I and II training are
12 | fairly straightforward. In AT, success rests on the foundation of awareness. However,
13 | some supporting skills, and resources such as how to conduct an assessment, and
14 | SIPRNET access, constitute a hidden set of necessary training. ATOs must take an
15 | exacting look at the current inventory of skills, determine which are needed, and develop
16 | a strategy to close the gap.

17 |
18 | 1. Training Strategy Development. ~~The solution is to let~~
19 | ~~your AT working group do the development work. This solution shall make use of their~~
20 | ~~varied expertise as well as giving them ownership of the strategy. Instead of imposing~~
21 | ~~the training externally, this approach allows for a process of internal adoption. From an~~
22 | ~~organizational viewpoint, this shall greatly speed the rate at which training occurs. The~~
23 | ~~Commander, through the operations staff, conducts the mission analysis necessary to~~
24 | ~~incorporate AT TTP into individual and collective training. The approved strategy is~~
25 | ~~then outlined within the unit training guidance and training goals.~~

26 |
27 | (d) Leverage AT Training and Expertise. The most obvious
28 | source of Level II trained personnel is your Service school. However, other options can
29 | be found in the toolbox. Cost and availability figure most heavily in selecting the
30 | supplier for each category. Quite often, organizations like the Interagency Operations
31 | Security (OPSEC) Support Staff shall can conduct mobile training teams at your location
32 | to train large numbers of individuals at a relatively low cost.

33 |
34 | (4) Exercises.

35 |
36 | (a) Exercise Standards. Commanders at all levels are required
37 | to exercise their AT plans at least annually.

38 |
39 | (b) Incremental Approach. Success is often achieved through
40 | steady, incremental progress (~~crawl before walking, walk before running~~). With this
41 | mindset, it is wise to begin by conducting staff exercises. Although the exercise
42 | requirement is an annual one, during the initial phases of a program, you may have to
43 | conduct a separate staff exercise, a communications/logistics exercise, and a field
44 | exercise all in 1 year. Remember that AT Plans ARE NOT considered to be valid or
45 | executable until they have been exercised. However, there is no requirement to exercise
46 | AT plans in a vacuum. AT scenarios/injects can be incorporated into a larger exercise in

1 order to extract the maximum training benefit for all concerned.

2
3 (c) Psychological Effect. An active exercise program can
4 create an impression of strength. Remember that people react to their perceptions as
5 though they are reality. Terrorists are no exception. ~~If terrorists can see that the US is~~
6 ~~prepared for their attacks, they shall shift their efforts elsewhere, thus fulfilling your AT~~
7 ~~Program's goal of deterring terrorist acts.~~

8
9 (d) Identifying Shortfalls. Exercises Identify Resource
10 Shortfalls. This presupposes a mechanism for capturing lessons learned. Once the
11 command identifies shortfalls, the process of covering the gaps can begin. The answer
12 ~~shall is~~ not always be an external provision of additional resources. Often, the answer
13 ~~shall may~~ be the reprogramming of internal resources.

14
15 (e) Joint Exercises/Operations. Nearly all combat operations,
16 ~~now and in the future, shall will normally~~ be joint operations. ~~However, U~~unless our
17 forces practice AT procedures during joint operations to resolve interoperability issues,
18 ~~soft spots vulnerabilities shall will~~ be created. Since terrorists specialize in asymmetric
19 attacks, failure to conduct joint AT exercises is a high-risk proposition.

20
21 (5) Resource generation

22
23 DOD O-2000.12-H, ~~Do~~OD *Antiterrorism Handbook*, Chapter 16,
24 provides a detailed description of the minimum essential elements of generating resource
25 requirements for AT Programs. AT Program reviews shall include an assessment of the
26 following:

- 27
28 (a) Generating requirements.
29
30 (b) Documenting resource requirements.
31
32 (c) Prioritizing resource requirements.
33
34 (d) Funding sources.
35
36 (e) Unfunded requirement submissions.

37
38 (6) Program Reviews.

39
40 VAs support the AT program review by identifying shortfalls in the
41 program itself. Areas to focus the assessment should include, but not be limited to, the
42 following:

- 43
44 (a) AT Plans and Programs.
45
46 (b) CI, Law Enforcement Liaison, and intelligence support.
-

- 1
- 2 (c) AT Physical Security Measures.
- 3
- 4 (d) Vulnerability to a Threat and Terrorist Incident Response
- 5 Measures.
- 6
- 7 (e) VAs for Terrorist Use of WMD.
- 8
- 9 (f) Host Nation, Local Community, Inter-Service, and Tenant
- 10 Support.
- 11

12 c. AT Program Concept. The AT program concept represents an integrated,
13 comprehensive approach within combatant commands and the Services to counter ~~the~~
14 terrorist threats to military installations, bases, ships, facilities, equipment, and personnel.
15 ~~By definition, the~~ AT plan contains all the specific measures taken necessary to
16 establish and maintain an AT program that meets the standards of DOD Directive
17 2000.12, *DoOD Antiterrorism (AT) Program* and DOD Instruction 2000.16, *DoOD*
18 *Antiterrorism Standards*. AT program elements include all the elements and assessments
19 of the Risk Management process, planning, training and exercises, resource generation
20 and a comprehensive program review. ~~Accordingly, an effective AT plan accounts for all~~
21 ~~aspects of the AT program.~~

22

23 d. AT Plan Requirements

24

25 At a minimum, the AT plan must address the key elements discussed below.
26 These elements must be integrated into and/or support a comprehensive AT program.
27 Stand-alone documents (e.g. Standard Operating Procedures, local regulations, or
28 operations orders that articulate requirements for these key elements) shall be replicated
29 in and/or referenced by the AT plan. The Threat, Critically, and Vulnerability
30 Assessments are components of a single integrated process and the risk assessment
31 (management) process is last, so resources or the lack thereof will be assigned as the
32 working group and Commander feels need for their specific area.

33

34 (1) Threat Assessment. The terrorism ~~TA~~ threat and vulnerability
35 assessment is the tool that commanders use to arrive at a judgment of risk and
36 consequences of terrorist attack. This assessment focuses on the full range of known or
37 estimated terrorist capabilities in the commander's area of interest, including WMD.
38 Annually, or upon FPCON change, commanders integrate threat information prepared by
39 the intelligence, counterintelligence and law enforcement communities, technical
40 information from security and engineering planners, and information from other sources
41 to prepare their assessments (see Appendix A).

42

43 (2) Vulnerability Assessment. This assessment provides a
44 vulnerability-based analysis of an activity's AT program. A tool for the commander, the
45 VA is the process to determine the susceptibility to attack by the broad range of terrorist
46 threats against personnel and assets. The result of the assessment provides a basis for

1 determining options to eliminate or mitigate vulnerabilities. Commanders shall conduct a
2 dedicated local VA at least annually, but there should be a means to adjust the assessment
3 as the threat changes (see Appendix B). There may be several vulnerability assessments
4 conducted on an installation (i.e., water vulnerability, CBRN vulnerability, etc.); the
5 finding of these functional area vulnerability assessments must be included in the overall
6 installation assessment.

7
8 (3) Criticality Assessment. The criticality assessment shall provide the
9 commander with a prioritized list of assets based on the necessity for mission completion
10 (see Appendix C). Inputs from all organizations shall be required to determine what
11 assets are required and how many. The completed information may be compiled into a
12 criticality matrix. This information is then combined with the threat and vulnerability
13 information to assess the AT risk.

14
15 (4) Risk Assessment. Commanders conduct a RA to integrate threat,
16 criticality and vulnerability information in order to make conscious and informed
17 decisions to commit resources or enact policies and procedures that mitigate or define the
18 risk. RA provides the commander with a clear picture of the current AT posture and
19 identifies those areas that need improvement. When conducting this assessment,
20 commanders shall consider the threat, asset criticality, and vulnerability of facilities,
21 programs, and systems, as well as deterrence and response capabilities.

22
23 (5) AT FPCON Measures. FPCON AT measures are the actions taken
24 at facilities to deter and/or prevent a terrorist(s) from conducting an attack. FPCONs are
25 the principal means through which commanders (or DOD civilian equivalent) apply an
26 operational decision to best protect personnel or assets from terrorist attack. AT
27 measures assimilate facilities, equipment, trained personnel, and procedures into a
28 comprehensive effort designed to provide optimal AT protection to personnel and assets.
29 The objective is to ensure an integrated approach to terrorist threats. Well-designed AT
30 measures direct actions that ensure threat detection, assessment, delay, denial, and
31 notification. AT measures should include provisions for the use of physical structures,
32 physical security equipment, chemical-biological-nuclear-radiological-explosive
33 detection and protection equipment, Random Antiterrorism Measures, response forces,
34 and other emergency measures (see Appendix F). AT measures should be scalable and
35 proportional to increases in the local threat and/or unit operational capability.

36
37 (6) Terrorist Incident Response Measures. These include procedures
38 to provide command, control, communication, and intelligence with the first responders
39 charged with the task of determining the full nature and scope of the incident, containing
40 damage, and countering the terrorist(s) that may still be present. The objective of
41 terrorist incident response measures is to limit the effects and the number of casualties
42 resulting from a terrorist attack. These measures and the strategy that ties them together
43 can also contribute to deterring terrorist attacks if our adversaries recognize our ability to
44 limit the effects of their attacks.

45
46 (7) Terrorist Consequence Management Measures Pre-planned

1 | Responses. Terrorist consequence management ~~measures-pre-planned responses~~ should
2 | include emergency response and disaster planning and/or preparedness to recover from a
3 | terrorist attack, to include WMD. Although not an element of AT, commanders shall
4 | include terrorist consequence management preparedness and ~~response-measures pre-~~
5 | planned responses as an adjunct to the organization's AT plan. In addition, special
6 | circumstances imposed by terrorist attacks utilizing WMD shall require immediate close
7 | coordination with higher command and host nation, and/or Federal, State, and local
8 | authorities.

9
10 | (8) Coverage for Off-Base Assets. In planning the coverage of off-
11 | base assets and infrastructure selected for inclusion in the facility, installation, or activity
12 | AT program, include notifications to the appropriate first responders, including law
13 | enforcement offices, and the servicing FBI field office. This shall enable integration of
14 | the facility into their response and contingency planning and provide a potential source to
15 | assist the facility in its own preparations and response. As necessary, validate and
16 | monitor the scope and viability of the coverage. If the asset is a cleared contractor
17 | facility, provide for reporting to the servicing Defense Security Service (DSS) Industrial
18 | Security Field Office (see DOD 5520.22-R, *Industrial Security Regulation*) of
19 | information that indicates classified information under facility control is or could be at
20 | risk. Promptly notify the servicing DSS office of any security requirements which the
21 | installation or activity intends that the cleared industrial facility implement.

23 | 2. AT Plan Development

24
25 | a. The ~~organization's~~ Commander is responsible for the development of the
26 | AT plan. The ATO is normally assigned the task of actually writing the plan. The ATO
27 | should leverage the capabilities of the organization's AT Working Group to assist in the
28 | process. Using the AT Working Group ensures the participation, input, and "buy-in" of
29 | the necessary subject matter experts and others with key responsibilities.

30
31 | b. ~~There is no directed methodology for developing an AT plan.~~—The
32 | responsibility to achieve thorough integration and avoid a "stovepiped" information flow
33 | rests with the ATO. Everyone involved in developing the plan must be familiar with all
34 | applicable AT directives and instructions. DOD *Antiterrorism Force Protection*
35 | *Installation Planning Template* and Weapons of Mass Destruction Appendix
36 | *Antiterrorism Force Protection Installation Planning Template* (copy available from the
37 | Deputy Directorate for Antiterrorism and Homeland Defense) detail the steps necessary
38 | to produce an AT plan. A sample Antiterrorism Plan Format is also provided in
39 | Appendix D.

40
41 | c. The following three phases are offered as a means to logically develop an AT
42 | plan:

43
44 | (1). Phase 1: Risk Assessment. Conduct the RA only after completing
45 | the criticality, threat, and vulnerability, ~~and critically~~-assessments. Any plan that does
46 | not start with these assessments shall be too reactive, misdirect resources, and result in

1 wasted efforts and resources.

2

3 (2). Phase 2: Build AT FPCON Measures Matrices, Terrorist Incident
4 Response Measures Matrices and Terrorist Consequence Management Measures
5 Matrices. This phase produces the heart of the AT plan and represents the “Concept of
6 Operations” in the five paragraph operation order format. The end products of this phase
7 shall be matrices of integrated pre-incident action sets to implement each FPCON
8 security measure at the five distinct FPCONs. Each integrated action set shall identify
9 who shall act, when they shall act, where they shall act, what the action is and the
10 resources to be used, and how these actions shall occur at the various FPCONs. There
11 should be similar matrices for each type of terrorist incident response and consequence
12 management event. This section also contains detailed Physical Security measures,
13 which are an outcome of developing the AT FPCON and Terrorist Incident matrixes.

14

15 (3) Phase 3: Writing the AT Plan. The challenge for the ATO
16 responsible for writing the plan is to select a format that best suits the organization’s
17 ability to understand the plan, and to execute it quickly and decisively when required.
18 While there is no mandated format, it is recommended that organizations use the ~~format~~
19 ~~included in Appendix D standard five paragraph order outlined in JP 5-002, Joint Task~~
20 ~~Force Planning Guidance and Procedures~~. Each level of organization shall necessarily
21 produce an AT plan consistent with their mission and responsibilities. For example, at
22 the installation level, the AT plan shall have a very tactical perspective and provide
23 minute details for actions to be taken locally. A ~~geographic~~ combatant commander’s
24 plan, on the other hand, shall be at the operational level and shall provide descriptive
25 guidance rather than prescriptive solutions.

26

27 **3. Combatant Commander’s Responsibility**

28

29 The geographic combatant commander ~~with permanently assigned forces~~
30 designates a staff officer, usually in the ~~Operations Directorate~~, law enforcement, or
31 security section, to supervise, inspect, test, and report on the base AT programs within the
32 theater. This staff section also coordinates with host-nation authorities and US embassies
33 ~~and consulates~~. Simultaneously, the ~~Intelligence Directorate of a joint staff (J-2), under~~
34 ~~the combatant commander’s authority~~, disseminates intelligence on terrorist activities to
35 ~~the~~ subordinate ~~and supporting~~ commands to ensure that the AT measures are appropriate
36 to the threat. The manner in which the geographic combatant commander places
37 importance on these staff functions usually has a direct affect on the AT readiness of
38 subordinate commands.

39

40

41

42

43

44

45

46

1
2
3
4
5
6
7
8
9
10
11
12
13
14
15
16
17
18
19
20
21
22

Intentionally Blank

1
2
3
4
5
6
7
8
9
10
11
12
13
14
15
16
17
18
19
20
21
22
23
24
25
26
27
28
29
30
31
32
33
34
35
36
37
38
39
40
41
42

CHAPTER VI
PREVENTIVE MEASURES AND CONSIDERATIONS

"A general should direct his whole attention to the tranquility of his cantonments, in order that the soldier may be relieved from all anxiety, and repose in security from his fatigues."
Attributed to Frederick the Great

1. Commander's Responsibility

Preventive and protective security measures should be taken by military units and individual Service members to protect themselves and their ability to accomplish their mission during mobilization, deployment, employment, sustainment, and redeployment and expeditionary operations. Additionally, rest and recuperation (R&R) facilities also require close consideration. These facilities are frequently vulnerable due to their location and generally easy access. Service personnel are at risk of lowering their guard while using these R&R facilities. The installation, ~~base,~~ ship, unit, or port AT plan provides the mechanism to ensure readiness against terrorist attacks while the unit performs its tactical ~~and technical~~ mission during deployments. The degree of the protection required depends on the threat in a given location. Commanders must constantly evaluate security against the terrorist threat in order to effectively evaluate security requirements. This responsibility cannot be ignored ~~in any situation.~~

2. AT Force Protection in High-Threat Areas

The following are antiterrorism tactics, techniques, and procedures for high ~~risk~~ threat area missions; ~~they~~ represent worst-case procedures. Security and force protection measures for forces performing security assistance, peacekeeping, mobile training teams, and ~~other small military similar~~ activities ~~can be derived from~~ are influenced by these measures.

a. Installations, Bases, Ships, and Expedition ary Sites, ~~and Non-Urban Facilities.~~ Forces are frequently employed for security operations or other short-term, conventional, combat-related tasks. Easily defended locations are often rare in urban areas because of building and population density or lack of proper cover and concealment and an inability to create perimeter stand-off. Political restrictions may also limit the military's ability to construct fortifications or disrupt areas. Commanders, however, but ~~commanders~~ must take all practical means to ensure force protection and identify shortcomings to appropriate levels of command for resolution. Military planners should adapt existing structures to provide protection based on the mission, potential for attack, and ability to use surroundings effectively.

(1) Estimate of the Situation. The commander and staff should complete a thorough estimate of the situation using mission, enemy, terrain, troops, time, and political planning factors in developing a security assessment. The following Figure VI-1 questions aid in developing an estimate of the terrorist situation:

1

| SITUATION ESTIMATE CHECKLIST | |
|-------------------------------------|---|
| MISSION: | <u>Who is being tasked?</u> |
| | <u>What is the task?</u> |
| | <u>When and where is this task to take place?</u> |
| | <u>Why are we performing this task?</u> |
| ENEMY: | <u>Who are the potential terrorists?</u> |
| | <u>What is known about the terrorists?</u> |
| | <u>— What is their agenda, capabilities?</u> |
| | <u>— Where is their support infrastructure?</u> |
| | <u>— Are they supported by the local population?</u> |
| | <u>— How can they be recognized?</u> |
| | <u>How do the terrorists receive information?</u> |
| | <u>— Have they infiltrated the installation, port, host nation military or the local law enforcement?</u> |
| | <u>How might the terrorists attack?</u> |
| | <u>— What is the potential for snipers, mortars, rockets, air or ground attacks, suicide attacks, arson, or kidnappings?</u> |
| | <u>Does your unit have routines?</u> |
| | <u>What is the potential for civil disturbances and could terrorists use or influence these disturbances in an attack?</u> |
| | <u>— Local law enforcement personnel and host and friendly nation intelligence services can be valuable sources of information.</u> |
| TERRAIN: | <u>What are the strengths and weaknesses of the installation, base, ship, port, and local surroundings?</u> |
| | <u>Are the avenues of approach above or below the water or ground?</u> |
| | <u>Are there observation areas, dead spaces, fields of fire, illumination, or no-fire areas (e.g., schools)?</u> |
| | <u>Are there tall buildings, water towers, or terrain either exterior or adjacent to the perimeter that could become critical?</u> |
| | <u>What local industries are in the area and what types of chemicals do they use?</u> |
| TROOPS: | <u>Are other US forces or equipment available?</u> |
| | <u>What local law enforcement, host nation, allied or friendly nation assets might be available?</u> |
| | <u>How do I vet non US personnel, such as contractors and other foreign or third country national who come on to the base?</u> |
| | <u>Are engineers and/or EOD in the area and will they be able to provide support?</u> |
| | <u>Are emergency reinforcements available?</u> |
| | <u>Are MWD teams available?</u> |

| | |
|---------------------------|--|
| | <u>What are the host-nation responsibilities, capabilities, and attitudes toward providing assistance?</u> |
| | <u>What restraints will be imposed by the USG on the show or use of force?</u> |
| COMMUNICATIONS: | <u>Is there a method for mass alerting across the base?</u> |
| | <u>What radios are used on base?</u> |
| | <u>Are they secure?</u> |
| | <u>Is there redundancy in the system?</u> |
| TIME: | <u>What is the duration of the mission?</u> |
| | <u>Are there time constraints?</u> |
| | <u>Will there be sufficient time to construct force protection facilities such as barriers, fences, and lights?</u> |
| POLITICAL PLANNING | <u>Are there host-nation concerns or attitudes that will impact on the situation?</u> |
| FACTORS: | |
| | <u>Will the situation be influenced by the existence of any religious, cultural, racial, or allied political concerns?</u> |

Figure VI-1. Situation Estimate Checklist

1
2
3
4
5
6
7
8
9
10
11
12
13
14
15
16
17
18
19
20
21
22
23
24
25
26
27
28
29

————— (a) Mission:

- 1. Who is being tasked?
- 2. What is the task?
- 3. When and where is this task to take place?
- 4. Why are we performing this task?

————— (b) Enemy:

- 1. Who are the potential terrorists?
- 2. What is known about the terrorists?
- 3. How do the terrorists receive information?
- 4. How might the terrorists attack? (Think like the terrorists! Would you ambush or raid? Would you use snipers, mortars, rockets, air or ground attacks, suicide attacks, firebombs, or bicycle, car, or truck bombs?)
- 5. Does your unit have routines?
- 6. What is the potential for civil disturbances and could terrorists use or influence these disturbances in an attack? Local law enforcement

1
2
3
4
5
6
7
8
9
10
11
12
13
14
15
16
17
18
19
20
21
22
23
24
25
26
27
28
29
30
31
32
33
34
35
36
37
38
39
40
41
42
43
44
45
46

personnel (e.g., host-nation police) can at times be a valuable source for this information,
host and friendly nation intelligence services can be valuable sources of information.

_____(c) Terrain:

_____What are the strengths and weaknesses of the
installation, base, ship, port, and local surroundings?

_____2. Are the avenues of approach above or below the water
or ground?

_____3. Are there observation areas, dead spaces, fields of fire, illumination,
or no-fire areas (e.g., schools)?

_____4. Are there tall buildings, water towers, or terrain either exterior or
adjacent to the perimeter that could become critical terrain in the event of an attack?

_____(d) Troops:

_____1. Determine what is the friendly situation.

_____2. Are other US forces or equipment available?

_____3. Are engineers and/or EOD in the area? Will they be
able to provide support?

_____4. Are emergency reinforcements available?

_____5. Are MWD teams available?

_____6. What are the host-nation responsibilities, capabilities,
and attitudes toward providing assistance?

_____7. What restraints will be imposed by the US
Government on the show or use of force?

_____(e) Time:

- 1 ~~1. What is the duration of the mission?~~
2
3 ~~2. Are there time constraints?~~
4
5 ~~3. Will there be sufficient time to construct force~~
6 ~~protection facilities such as barriers, fences, and lights?~~

- 7
8 ~~(f) Political Planning Factors:~~
9
10 ~~1. Are there host nation concerns or attitudes that will~~
11 ~~impact on the situation?~~
12
13 ~~2. Will the situation be influenced by the existence of any~~
14 ~~religious or racial concerns?~~
15

16 (2) Develop Plan. ~~Defenses-Planning~~ should include a combination of
17 law enforcement and security assets ~~barrier planning, fortifications~~, sensors ~~employment~~,
18 ~~other obstacles (such as ditches or barriers)~~, local-hire security forces (if applicable), unit
19 guards, deception, and on-call support from reaction forces. Each situation requires its
20 own combination of abilities based on available resources and perceived need.
21 ~~Terrorist incident response and Terrorist consequence management planning should~~
22 ~~include considerations for fire response, NBC and TIC response (including in place~~
23 ~~sheltering and evacuation considerations), mass notification, EOD/IED response, medical~~
24 ~~response and evacuation, and mass casualty procedures.~~

25
26 (a) Obstacles. Obstacles slow down or disrupt vehicles and
27 personnel approaching an area. Constructing vehicle barriers by using commercially
28 installed electronic barriers, trenches, masonry barriers, concrete-filled oil drums, or
29 vehicles staggered across the route creating a zigzag maze forces vehicles to slow down
30 and make sharp turns and exposes the driver to capture or direct fire. Scattering speed
31 bumps or sandbags on the route further slows traffic. ~~Also consider employment of road~~
32 ~~spikes, dragon teeth, or tire shredders to slow down unauthorized traffic. The force~~
33 ~~protection exposition and display (FPED) usually produces a compilation of useful~~
34 ~~equipment and can be found on line or requested from DTRA at atfphelp@dtra.mil.~~
35 Designing entrance gates to allow access to authorized personnel while denying access to
36 unauthorized personnel by use of controlled turnstiles provides time for observation and
37 protection to guards and slows down direct frontal attacks. Fences, entrance gates, and
38 obstacles should be illuminated to provide easy observation. Obstacles must be covered
39 by observation and fire.

40
41 (b) Local Security. Local security must be around-the-clock
42 to provide observation, early warning and, if necessary, live fire capabilities. The
43 security should include guards at entrances to check right of entry in observation posts
44 (OPs), around perimeter, and on rooftops to view the surrounding area. These guard
45 positions must also be integrated into the AT plan to enable their use in augmenting
46 responding law enforcement personnel. Security forces should have available to them

1 and be trained in specialized equipment for responding to terrorist attacks and/or
 2 incidents (See Figure VI-1). Local installations, with the assistance of the parent Service,
 3 should identify and procure this equipment based on Service directives and the local
 4 situation. Security review should also include review of procurement, storage, and
 5 preparation of food supplies used on base. A food vulnerability assessment can be
 6 initiated by food services personnel to review the complete food process.

7
 8 (3) Establish Defense. Measures taken to establish the defense must be
 9 continually reviewed and progressively updated to counter the changing threat and add an
 10 element of unpredictability to the terrorist’s calculation. Defensive measures include the

| SECURITY FORCE EQUIPMENT | |
|---------------------------------|--------------------------------|
| Pyrotechnic pistols | Marshalling wands |
| Riot shotguns | Telescopes and tripods |
| Tear gas launchers | Binoculars |
| Hand-held flashlights | Night vision devices |
| Antiriot helmets | Loud speakers |
| Shields 3'6" | Fire extinguishers |
| Shields 6' | Cameras with flash and tripods |
| Side-handled or straight batons | Telescopic sights |
| Hand cuffs | Photographic filter |
| NBC protective masks | Body Armor |
| Handgun/rifle | Radio |
| Ammunition | Hearing protection |

Figure VI-2. Security Force Equipment

11 following:

12
 13 (a) Determine priority of work (assign sectors of observation
 14 and fire, construct obstacles, fortify).

15
 16 (b) Improve obstacles, fortifications, and the defense as a
 17 whole. Long-term deployments should program engineer assets and force protection or
 18 physical security funds toward the construction of permanent fixtures.

19
 20 (c) Establish inspections and immediate action drills,
 21 exercises, and training to implement the security plan.

22
 23 (d) Maintain, when possible, secure radio or landline
 24 communications with the military police, security guards, and reaction force(s).

25
 26 (e) Keep abreast of current military and host-nation police
 27 and intelligence assessments.

1
2
3
4
5
6
7
8
9
10
11
12
13
14
15
16
17
18
19
20
21
22
23
24
25
26
27
28
29
30
31
32
33
34
35
36
37
38
39
40
41
42
43
44
45
46

b. Guard Duties. Guard duties are detailed in ~~Service regulations and in local, general, and special orders~~ and standard operating procedures. In a ~~terrorist~~ high-risk environment, special orders should address as a minimum the following:

- (1) Details of authorized passes; provide samples of passes;
- (2) Procedures for searching people and vehicles;
- (3) Response to approach by unauthorized personnel or hostile crowds;
- (4) Specific rules of engagement (ROE) or use of force ~~policy in the event of civil disturbances, potential damage, or injury to US personnel or specific property, looting, or arson;~~
- (5) Response to unauthorized photography and surveillance activities;
- (6) Steps necessary to obtain police, reaction force(s), fire department, and ambulance;
- (7) Guidelines for contact with host-nation police;
- (8) Guidelines for contact with press and media;

(9) Evacuation procedures.

c. Road Movement. Road movements are always vulnerable to terrorist attacks in high-risk areas. Road reconnaissance should be conducted periodically to identify high-threat areas. If possible, alternate forms of transportation (e.g., helicopters) should be used. If road movement is required:

- (1) Avoid establishing a regular pattern;
- (2) Vary routes and timing;
- (3) Travel in groups, never single vehicles;
- ~~(4) Do not stop for dead or dying animals in/beside the road;~~
- ~~(5) Do not allow people to walk-up to vehicles;~~
- (46) Avoid traveling at night unless tactical advantage can be gained through use of night vision devices. Additional precautions should be considered if travel is required during periods of agitation (e.g., religious or political holidays);
- (57) When possible, keep a low profile (use vehicles that do not stand out);

- 1
- 2 | (68) Plan alternate routes and reactions to various threatening
- 3 | scenarios;
- 4 |
- 5 | (79) Plan communications requirements;
- 6 |
- 7 | (810) Avoid dangerous areas (e.g., ambush sites, areas known for
- 8 | violence);
- 9 |
- 10 | (911) Provide adequate security;
- 11 |
- 12 | (4012) Plan in advance for maintenance and evacuation; and
- 13 |
- 14 | (4113) Use countersurveillance.
- 15 |

16 d. Vehicle Protection. Take the following precautions when using tactical and
17 some types of commercial vehicles, such as trucks, in a high-risk area:

- 18
- 19 (1) Place sandbags on floorboards and fenders;
- 20
- 21 (2) Cover sandbags with rubber or fiber mats;
- 22
- 23 (3) If carrying personnel, sandbag the vehicle bed as well as the
- 24 driver's compartment;
- 25
- 26 (4) Remove canvas so passengers can see and shoot;
- 27
- 28 (5) Fold windshield in driver's compartment and fit high-wire cutter.
- 29 Lower side windows and place wire over all openings to deflect grenades or IEDs;
- 30
- 31 (6) Normally, avoid large concentrations of personnel in any one
- 32 vehicle. If necessary, assign convoys additional vehicles to disperse personnel loads;
- 33
- 34 (7) Passengers riding in truck bed face outboard and are assigned
- 35 sectors of observation and fire;
- 36
- 37 (8) Rig chicken wire or chain link screens on front bumper frame to
- 38 deflect rocks, bottles, firebombs, and grenades;
- 39
- 40 (9) Carry pioneer tools (fire extinguishers in particular), a line with
- 41 grappling hook to clear obstacles, and tow bars for disabled vehicles;
- 42
- 43 (10) When the threat of hostile fire is constant, plan for the use of
- 44 vehicles with additional armored protection.
- 45

46 e. Convoys. In extremely high-risk areas, consider using armed escorts for

- 1 convoy protection.
- 2
- 3 (1) Develop and rehearse immediate action drills before movement;
- 4
- 5 (2) Perform route clearance before movement;
- 6
- 7 (3) Establish and maintain communications throughout the route;
- 8
- 9 (4) Develop deception plans to conceal or change movement timing
- 10 and route;
- 11
- 12 (5) If possible, include host-nation police and/or military personnel in
- 13 the convoy;
- 14
- 15 (6) When selecting routes, avoid entering or remaining in dangerous
- 16 areas. If ambushed, gauge response by enemy strength. Counter ambushes by
- 17 accelerating through the ambush area, counterattacking, withdrawing, or withdrawing and
- 18 staging a deliberate attack.
- 19
- 20 (7) Convoy escort composition depends on available forces. ~~Light~~
- 21 ~~armored vehicles, high mobility multipurpose wheeled vehicles, or trucks equipped with~~
- 22 ~~M2 50 caliber and MK19 40mm machine guns are extremely effective. Vehicles used~~
- 23 ~~should be appropriately hardened and possess the necessary weapons systems and other~~
- 24 ~~equipment to address the threat.~~ Overhead helicopters and AC-130 gunships can also be
- 25 used as air escorts if available. Escorts should be organized into an advance guard, main
- 26 body escort, and reaction or strike group. Planning considerations are as follows:
- 27
- 28 (a) Determine concept of operation;
- 29
- 30 (b) Identify available transportation;
- 31
- 32 (c) Identify order of march and road organization;
- 33
- 34 (d) Identify disposition of advance guard, main body escort,
- 35 and reserve;.
- 36
- 37 (e) Designate assembly area for convoy;
- 38
- 39 (f) Determine rendezvous time at assembly area, departure
- 40 time of first and last vehicle, and expected arrival of first and last vehicle at destination;
- 41
- 42 (g) Identify action upon arrival;
- 43
- 44 (h) Determine required coordinating instructions for speed,
- 45 spacing, halts, immediate action drills, breakdowns, and lost vehicles.
- 46

1 f. Rail Movement. Rail movement is the most difficult form of transportation to
2 conceal and protect because it follows a predictable route and rail heads are difficult to
3 conceal. Opportunities for deception are limited and physical security is critical. The
4 following security precautions should be considered:

- 5
- 6 (1) Restrict passengers to military personnel only;
- 7
- 8 (2) Search for explosives or possible hijackers before departure and
9 after every halt (MWDs are particularly suited for this mission);
- 10
- 11 (3) Ensure that the railway is free of obstructions or explosives;
- 12
- 13 (4) Patrol the railway area;
- 14
- 15 (5) Place armed security personnel on duty throughout the train,
16 including engine room and trail car;
- 17
- 18 (6) Patrol and guard departure and arrival stations;
- 19
- 20 (7) Use deception measures;
- 21
- 22 (8) Provide air cover (AC-130, helicopters);
- 23
- 24 (9) Maintain communications within the train and with outside
25 agencies;
- 26
- 27 (10) Provide reaction force to be moved by air or coordinate host-
28 nation support (HNS) (if available).
- 29

30 g. Sea Movement. Sea movement, especially aboard military vessels, may
31 provide a false sense of security. Sea operations are certainly more secure than urban
32 patrols; however, ships in harbor or anchored off hostile coastlines are visible and high-
33 risk targets. Crews of ships in harbors need to evaluate each new port and determine
34 possible terrorist actions and ship's force counteractions (such as using fire and steam
35 hoses to repel attackers). Crew members must be aware of HNS and responsibilities
36 while in port or anchored in foreign national waters. The ship's captain is solely
37 responsible for the ship and all those embarked. As a minimum, the captain:

- 38
- 39 (1) Establishes methods of embarkation and debarkation and patrol
40 activities for all personnel;
- 41
- 42 (2) Identifies vital areas of the ship (for example, engine room,
43 weapons storage, command and control bridge), and assigns security guards;
- 44
- 45 (3) Coordinates above and below waterline responsibilities;
- 46

1 (4) Establishes a weapons and ammunition policy and ROE, and
2 appoints a reaction force (e.g., security alert team, backup alert force, and/or response
3 force); and

4
5 (5) Drills all personnel involved.
6

7 h. Air Movement. For the most part, while a unit is being transported by air it
8 is under the purview of the Air Force or air movement control personnel. Troop
9 commanders and Air Force personnel coordinate duties and responsibilities for their
10 mutual defense. Personnel must remain vigilant and leaders must provide adequate
11 security. Unit security personnel coordinate with airfield security personnel, assist
12 departures and arrivals at airfields while en route, and determine weapons and
13 ammunition policies. Special considerations include the following topics:
14

15 (1) Road transport security when driving to and from airfields is
16 critical. Keep arrival arrangements low profile. Do not pre-position road transport at the
17 airport for extended periods before arrival.
18

19 (2) If pre-positioned transport is required, attach a security element and
20 station it within the airfield perimeter. Security at the arrival airfield can be the
21 responsibility of the HN and requires close coordination. Maintain communications
22 between all elements until the aircraft is “wheels-up” and, upon arrival, reestablish
23 communications with the new security element.
24

25 (3) All personnel (air crews and transported unit) must be cautioned
26 concerning the transportation of souvenirs and other personal items that could be
27 containers for explosives.
28

29 (4) Man-portable weapons systems in the hands of terrorists create
30 additional planning challenges for the security of aircraft. Planning considerations should
31 include defensive measures against such systems in the choosing of airfields and forward
32 arming and refueling points.
33

34 i. Patrolling. Units outside the United States may be called upon to conduct
35 patrols in urban or rural environments. These patrols will normally be planned and
36 executed in conjunction with host-nation authorities and should be coordinated with the
37 representatives of the appropriate staff judge advocate office and be in accordance with
38 any applicable basing, status-of-forces, or other agreements. Patrols support police
39 operations, expand the area of influence, gather information, police nightclubs and
40 restaurants, detain individuals as required, conduct hasty searches, and erect hasty
41 roadblocks. Patrols must understand the ROE. Patrolling units should avoid patterns by
42 varying times and routes, using different exit and entry points at the base, doubling back
43 on a route, and using vehicles to drop off and collect patrols and change areas. Base
44 sentries or guards, other vehicle patrols, helicopters, OPs, host-nation assets, and reaction
45 forces provide additional support.
46

1 j. Roadblocks. There are two types of roadblocks: deliberate and hasty.
2 Deliberate roadblocks are permanent or semi-permanent roadblocks used on borders,
3 outskirts of cities, or the edge of controlled areas. Use deliberate roadblocks to check
4 identification and as a deterrent. Use hasty roadblocks to spot check, with or without
5 prior intelligence. Hasty roadblocks use the element of surprise. Their maximum effect
6 is reached within the first half hour of being positioned. Hasty roadblocks can consist of
7 two vehicles placed diagonally across a road, a coil of barbed wire, or other portable
8 obstacles. Roadblocks must not unnecessarily disrupt the travel of innocent civilians.
9 Personnel manning roadblocks must know their jobs thoroughly, be polite and
10 considerate, act quickly and methodically, use the minimum force required for the threat,
11 and promptly relinquish suspects to civil police authorities. General principles
12 considered in establishing roadblocks are concealment, security, construction and layout,
13 manning, equipment, communications, and legal issues. Unless combined posts (HN and
14 US personnel) are used, language training will be a key planning factor in employing
15 roadblocks.
16

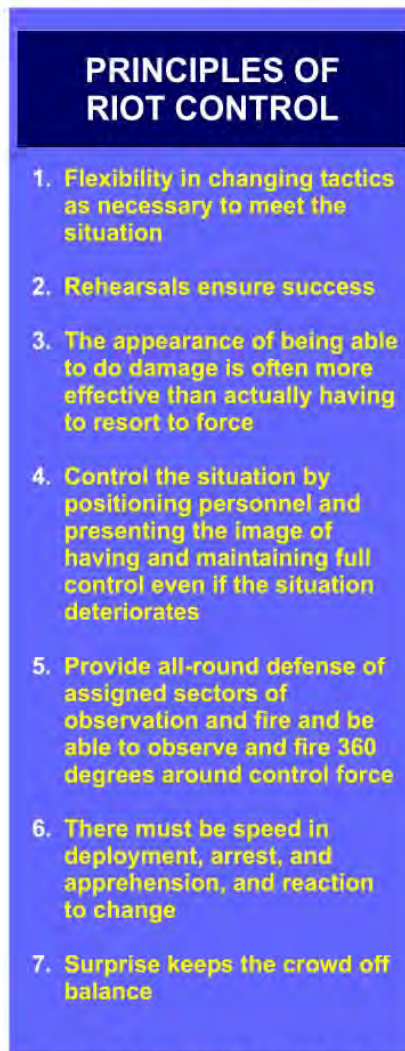


17
18 *Deployed joint forces may be tasked to conduct antiterrorist operations in*
19 *urban areas.*
20

21 k. Observation Posts. OPs provide prolonged observation of areas, people, or
22 buildings. OPs are critical. OPs allow observation of an area for possible terrorist
23 activity (avenues of approach); observation of a particular building or street; ability to
24 photograph persons or activities; ability to observe activity before, during, or after a
25 security force operation (e.g., house search) and ability to provide covering fire for
26 patrols. Special factors apply to OPs located in urban areas. The OP party and reaction
27 force must know the procedure, ROE, escape routes, emergency withdrawal procedures,
28 rallying point, casualty evacuation, and password. Cover the occupation and withdrawal
29 of an OP by conducting normal operations (e.g., house searches, roadblocks, patrols to
30 leave people behind), flooding an area with patrols to disguise movement, using civilian
31 vehicles and clothes, and using deception. Any compromise of an OP location should be
32 immediately reported.

1
2
3
4
5
6
7
8
9
10
11

I. Civil Disturbances. Crowd violence can either be a spontaneous emotional eruption or a planned event. In the latter case, its purpose is to draw police or troops into a target area or away from some other event. Crowd violence may also involve violence within the crowd or from opposing groups. Crowd violence is characterized by incitement and violence; both are highly contagious. Riot control aims to restore order with minimum use of force. Bearing in mind that the size or motivation of the crowd may prevent its control, the general approach is to reduce or disrupt the crowd's unifying influences and reorient the participants to concerns for personal vulnerability and welfare. The principles of riot control are shown in Figure VI-23.



12
13
14
15
16

Figure VI-23. Principles of Riot Control

1 m. Bomb Explosion or Discovery. The initial terrorist bomb may not be the
2 end of the incident. The initial bomb may be designed to draw forces into an area as
3 targets for a shooting ambush or another explosion. Upon discovery of a bomb or upon
4 entering a bomb site, response forces should proceed with extreme caution and contact
5 the EOD team immediately. ~~Explosive detection MWDs should be considered upon~~
6 ~~bomb discovery or during entry to the site of the explosion.~~ Explosive detection MWDs,
7 EOD or other available detection methods should be utilized to sweep areas surrounding
8 suspected explosive devices or incident sites for secondary devices.
9

10 n. Personal Protective Measures. Overseas deployments require a high degree
11 of personal protective measures. DOD personnel must be aware of basic personal
12 protective measures against terrorism, specific threats for the area they will operate in or
13 transit, and specialized training which their duty or position requires, but the commander
14 must also focus on the exposure of the troops to any special terrorist threat. This requires
15 particular attention to areas where troops will live, work, and conduct R&R.
16 Coordination between military intelligence, counterintelligence and law enforcement ~~and~~
17 ~~intelligence~~ agencies and host-nation forces is critical. The deployed military member
18 must also understand the threat and required personal security measures.
19

20 **3. Tactical Force Protection**

21
22 During joint and multinational operations, US units and bases in the joint rear
23 area (JRA) are still vulnerable to terrorist attacks. The same procedures identified in the
24 preceding paragraphs apply. Commanders will be advised by the JRA coordinator
25 (JRAC) of potential terrorist threats, and subordinate commands will report any terrorist
26 activity to the JRAC. Units passing through the JRA are still required to maintain AT
27 measures commensurate with the JRAC's guidance. Specific tactics, techniques, and
28 procedures for operations in the JRA are contained in JP 3-10, *Joint Doctrine for Rear*
29 *Area Operations*.
30

31 **4. Suicide Bombers/High Risk Vehicle Checkpoints.**

32
33 a. The purpose of this section is to highlight references and resources and
34 capture best practices to enhance antiterrorism mitigation measures for conducting high
35 risk vehicle checkpoints and deterring suicide/homicide bombers.
36

37 b. Recent vehicle borne bomb and suicide/homicide bomber attacks in Saudi
38 Arabia and in operation IRAQI FREEDOM highlight this threat to our forces. Because
39 of robust protective measures in place at DOD installations, our checkpoints and
40 roadblocks are increasingly becoming prime targets for terrorists. Security forces at
41 access control points can also be targeted as a means to gain access to
42 installations/compounds.
43

44 c. The land component command for operation IRAQI FREEDOM and the
45 service components have established excellent tactics, techniques, and procedures for
46 dealing with high risk vehicle checkpoints and the suicide/homicide bomber. Tactics,

1 techniques, procedures and lessons learned on Service and combatant command web sites
2 and DIA JITF-CT assessments of terrorist tactics are excellent sources for commanders
3 and antiterrorism officers to review. The following paragraphs provide information
4 gleaned from component threat reporting, tactics, techniques, procedures, and lessons
5 learned.

6
7 d. Threat.

8
9 (1) Insights from recent attacks:

10
11 (a) Several vehicle bomb and suicide bomber attacks were
12 made at checkpoints during combat operations in Iraq during March and April 2003. An
13 Iraqi posing as a taxi cab driver feigned a break down and detonated his vehicle when
14 four soldiers approached killing them all. Three rangers were killed in western Iraq when
15 an SUV drove up to their check point (along with other cars) and then exploded. In
16 another instance, an Iraqi at a checkpoint set off explosives hidden under his clothes
17 wounding a number of marines. In all cases, deception was used to get close to US
18 forces and increase the effect of the attack. This tactic is continuing to be used by enemy
19 paramilitary during the stability phase.

20
21 (b) The terrorist attack on 12 May conducted against three
22 residential housing compounds in Riyadh, Saudi Arabia occurred minutes apart using the
23 same method. In each of these attacks, an initial assault team was used to penetrate the
24 gate followed by another group that drove a vehicle-borne improvised explosive device
25 through the breached gate and detonated it next to a pre-selected target on the installation.
26 There are a number of conclusions that can be drawn from these attacks:

27
28 1. The terrorists conducted pre-operational surveillance
29 and identified weak points at gates and in security procedures to strike soft targets and
30 Americans.

31
32 2. The three attacks were conducted simultaneously-a
33 signature Al-Qaeda tactic.

34
35 3. Terrorists added modifications to their tactics in order
36 to defeat security measures that have been designed to counter previous attacks.

37
38 (2) Suicide bomber threat. All individual suicide devices are based
39 upon the simple concept of using a human being to deliver a bomb to a target. Generally,
40 the bomb will have the following characteristics:

41
42 (a) A simple switch for initiation consisting of a push-button
43 or toggle switch completing an electric circuit. Relatively small initiation devices reduce
44 the chances of discovery.

45
46 (b) Fragmentation such as nails, ball bearings, or other small

1 metal pieces. Dispersed fragmentation is the primary kill mechanism in individual
2 suicide bombing attacks.

3
4 _____ (c) Devices are generally concealed within an article of
5 clothing worn close to the body – such as a vest, belt, or jacket. However, there have
6 been instances where the explosive device is disguised to look like a common, innocuous
7 object.

8
9 _____ (d) Plasticized explosive as a main charge – usually a
10 homemade mixture, although groups with access to greater resources utilize military
11 grade explosives.

12
13 _____ (e) Many devices have a backup trigger system, such as an
14 electronic timer, pager, or booby-trap type switch. If the attacker is killed, apprehended,
15 or attempts to abort the attack, a secondary trigger system provides an alternative
16 initiation method.

17
18 _____ (3) Possible indicators of a suicide/homicide bomber are as follows:

19
20 _____ (a) An individual who deliberately ignores orders to stop or
21 attempts to circumvent a security checkpoint.

22
23 _____ (b) An individual wearing too much clothing for the
24 prevailing weather conditions.

25
26 _____ (c) A person with suspicious bulges in their clothing, carrying
27 packages/bags, wearing satchels/backpacks or walks with unsteady gate.

28
29 _____ (d) Individuals may exhibit a wide range of characteristics,
30 such as clean shaven with closely cropped hair, exhibits unusual emotional demeanor
31 such as blank stare, grin, unresponsive, and may perspire or appear gaunt and/or ill.

32
33 _____ (e) An individual handling wires, switches, an actuator, or a
34 dead mans switch.

35
36 _____ (4) Vehicle borne improvised explosive device (VBIED) threat. A
37 VBIED is a vehicle modified to conceal and deliver large quantities of explosives to a
38 target. The motive behind such incidents is to cause many casualties and gross property
39 damage. Possible indicators of a VBIED threat are as follows:

40
41 _____ (a) noticeable sagging of the vehicle on its springs caused by
42 the heavy weight of explosives found in it. Ordinarily the explosives will be placed
43 toward the rear of the vehicle, causing it to ride lower in the rear. However, sagging
44 springs are not normally characteristic of trucks being used for VBIEDS because these
45 vehicles are designed to carry the weight.

- 1 (b) darkened or covered windows to conceal either the
2 vehicles contents or the actions of the driver.
3
4 (c) unusual items inside the vehicle: gas cylinders, wires,
5 leaflets, large bags or boxes, and batteries besides the normal car battery.
6
7 (d) Indications of a triggering device-i.e., a switch, radio
8 transmitter, timer, wires or ropes passing from the front seat to the rear of the vehicle, etc.
9 - visible near the driver, under the seat, or within arms reach.
10
11 (e) The presence of the vehicle in an area where it should not
12 be, perhaps illegally parked.
13
14 (f) Holes made in the vehicle body to hide explosives and
15 then crudely covered.
16
17 (g) Evidence that an interior door panel has been removed to
18 hide explosives.
19
20 (h) The presence of powder or prills (small rounded granular
21 material) left when explosive material was loaded into the vehicle.
22
23 (i) Recent painting of the vehicle to cover body alterations.
24
25 (j) additional fuel tanks, used to secrete explosives or to
26 provide additional gasoline to fuel the explosive event.
27
28 (k) unusual smells, E.G., a burning time fuse, gasoline,
29 fertilizer, etc.
30
31 (l) an additional antenna on the car for radio-controlled
32 devices.
33
34 (m) any disturbance to the undercoating or dirt on the bottom
35 of a vehicle.
36
37 (n) Indications that drivers may be associated with VBIED
38 are the follows:
39
40 1. driving erratically; driving too slow or too fast.
41
42 2. Ignoring orders to stop, attempting to circumvent a
43 security checkpoint, or attempting to maneuver too close to coalition assets.
44
45 3. Wearing inappropriate dress or grooming for the
46 vehicle type.

1
2
3
4
5
6
7
8
9
10
11
12
13
14
15
16
17
18
19
20
21
22
23
24
25
26
27
28
29
30
31
32
33
34
35
36
37
38
39
40
41
42
43
44
45
46

4. Signs of nervousness, sweating, shaking, or unusual speech patterns.

5. The presence of a lone driver in the vehicle. This is standard for VBID operations; however, there could be any number of people in the vehicle if the VBIED is being driven by an unsuspecting person.

6. Inability to operate the truck or equipment properly.

7. Atypical appearance. Middle Eastern terrorists may be uncharacteristically clean-shaven and have very short haircuts. Cutting the hair is a part of the purifying ritual that many follow prior to an attack.

8. Age: mid-twenties. The average Middle Eastern suicide terrorist is about 24 or 25, but in the current Iraqi situation, age is less of a discriminator.

(o) Other suspicious conditions:

1. Occupants careful when closing the doors.

2. Vehicle left locked and unoccupied.

3. Not obviously engaged in loading or unloading.

4. Displaying hazard warning lights.

5. Parked near or adjacent to an important target.

6. Illegally parked.

(p) Common areas for concealing VBIED explosives:

1. Above roof liner.

2. Behind door panels.

3. In spare wheel well.

4. In hollowed-out seats.

5. Under false flooring.

6. Inside fuel tank (smaller alternate fuel tank elsewhere).

1 7. In legitimate cargo area – such as trunk, trailer, or
2 storage bin.

3
4 8. In legitimate packaged cargo.

5
6 (q) General safe blast/fragmentation distances for VBID have
7 been determined to be as follows:

8
9 1. Compact sedans can carry a maximum of 500 pounds
10 (227 kilos) of explosive in the tank. This gives a lethal blast range of approximately 30
11 meters, and a fragmentation hazard of 381 meters.

12
13 2. Full-size sedans can carry a maximum of 1,000 pounds
14 (455 kilos) of explosive in the tank. This gives a lethal blast range of approximately 38
15 meters, and a fragmentation hazard of 534 meters.

16
17 3. Passenger or cargo vans can carry a maximum of
18 4,000 pounds (1,818 kilos) of explosive. This gives a lethal blast range of approximately
19 61 meters, and a fragmentation hazard of 838 meters.

20
21 4. Small box vans (14 ft) can carry a maximum of 10,000
22 pounds (4,545 kilos) of explosive. This gives a lethal blast range of approximately 91
23 meters, and a fragmentation hazard of 1,143 meters.

24
25 5. Box van or water/fuel trucks can carry a maximum of
26 30,000 pounds (13,636 kilos) of explosive. This gives a lethal blast range of
27 approximately 137 meters, and a fragmentation hazard of 1,982 meters.

28
29 6. Semi-trailer can carry a maximum of 60,000 pounds
30 (27,273 kilos) of explosive. This gives a lethal blast range of approximately 183 meters,
31 and a fragmentation hazard of 2,134 meters.

32
33 e. The following TTP may prove effective deterring, disarming or mitigating
34 pedestrian suicide bomber attacks:

35
36 (1) Visual observation remains the primary method of detecting
37 suicide bombers (see indicators in para 4.C). Screening methods can also be employed
38 such as having suspects open their coats or lift shirts at a safe distance before
39 approaching a checkpoint. Thermal images have proven effective for standoff detection
40 of concealed weapons on personnel, provided that external clothing is not too heavy.
41 These items serve as a heat sink (i.e., block radioactive emissions) and therefore are
42 rendered as distinct spots on thermal images. This technique may prove effective for
43 detecting concealed explosives but has not been tested in this role.

44
45 (2) If a bomber is identified, orders should be issued to evacuate the
46 area immediately (minimum of 50 meters away) and to take cover (behind substantial

1 barrier). Safe distances depend upon the mass of explosive carried by the bomber and the
2 amount and type of fragments used. Distances will necessarily be constrained in urban
3 conditions but safety zones must be considered when selecting checkpoints or
4 establishing gate operations. It should always be assumed that fragments are part of the
5 charge as safe standoff distances are greater for fragments than for blast.

6
7 _____ (3) If a bomber is identified, security personnel should train weapons
8 on the bomber and maintain eye contact from behind cover. Ensure fields of fire have
9 been identified and rehearsed to avoid fratricide and endanger innocent bystanders.

10
11 _____ (4) Separate the subject from the IED: warn target that failure to
12 comply will result in death. Give order to raise hands, take off outer garments and place
13 on the ground. Have subject move a safe distance away from clothing and then handcuff.
14 Close and negotiate tactics should not be attempted, as homicide bombers are trained to
15 avoid surrender at all costs.

16
17 _____ (5) Assume a fail safe cell phone or radio-controlled initiator could be
18 used in the event that the bomber is incapacitated or hesitates. This tactic would
19 normally involve a second suspect with a line-of-sight view of the bomber. Consider
20 surveillance detection efforts to monitor the environment and deter enemy observers near
21 the checkpoint or gate.

22
23 _____ (6) If deadly force is employed, bullet impact may initiate the
24 explosive charge(s). Therefore firing on the suspect should be undertaken from cover
25 and not be aimed at mid-body.

26
27 _____ (7) If the suspect is neutralized and there is no explosion, do not
28 administer first aid. The explosive charge should be rendered safe by authorized EOD
29 personnel only.

30
31 _____ f. The following are TTP to consider to mitigate the VBIED threat at high risk
32 vehicle checkpoints:

33
34 _____ (1) Elements:

35
36 _____ (a) A headquarters element to ensure command and control.

37
38 _____ (b) A security element to provide early warning and observe
39 flow of vehicles approaching the checkpoint.

40
41 _____ (c) Traffic sentry to operate stop point forward of and controls
42 traffic leading to checkpoint. Signs in the local language should be used to communicate
43 instructions for negotiating barriers leading to search location.

44
45 _____ (d) Search team to halt vehicles, conduct searches and direct
46 cleared vehicles onward. One member should search the vehicle while the other team

- 1 members provide over watch.
2
3 _____ (e) An assault element in fortified positions to overwatch
4 checkpoint. This element should be prepared to engage (consistent with ROE) any
5 vehicle that attempts to force its way through or poses a danger to the checkpoint.
6
7 _____ (2) Checkpoints should present a robust security posture in order to
8 discourage threats. Consider employing armored vehicles and crew served weapons in
9 overwatch positions to support dismounted troops. Consider an antiarmor capability for
10 security elements.
11
12 _____ (a) A serpentine vehicle maze (barriers/freeway dividers) can
13 be used to slow vehicles approaching the search area. A vehicle maze will enable
14 security personnel more time to react to a vehicle attempting to run or attack the check
15 point, as well as channel threat vehicles in escape lanes to a predetermined location for
16 engagement.
17
18 _____ (b) Hasty checkpoints should take advantage of terrain
19 features/surrounding obstacles (bridges, highway/road intersections, reverse slope of a
20 hill, just beyond a sharp curve) to slow vehicles as they approach the checkpoint.
21 Deliberate checkpoints may require engineers or other support to emplace obstacles and
22 barriers to channel traffic. Deliberate checkpoints should include holding/search areas
23 with appropriate blast protection for personnel conducting searches.
24
25 _____ (3) Suggested procedures:
26
27 _____ (a) Instruct passengers to get out of the vehicle at a pre-
28 designated and well-marked search area.
29
30 _____ (b) All passengers should be instructed to come out with arms
31 above their heads. Once out of the vehicle, instruct male passengers to lift their shirts in
32 order to enable security forces to observe waist. If there is doubt, have them strip.
33
34 _____ (c) Instruct one passenger to open all doors, hood, and trunk.
35
36 _____ (d) Consider that women and children have also carried out
37 attacks and ensure they are disarmed as well. Use female US military/host nation
38 security personnel to search women and children in a separate, closed area.
39
40 _____ (e) If any member or the checkpoint has any doubt about the
41 vehicle, back everyone off and call for assistance.
42
43 _____ (4) Suggested equipment – the following are mission enhancing tools
44 at a high risk checkpoint:
45
46 _____ (a) Loud speaker team with linguist. Time permitting, prepare
-

1 and emplace signs in the local language instructing drivers what to expect and do at the
2 checkpoint.

3
4 (b) Explosive detector dog teams.

5
6 (c) Use of metal detector wands for physical searches, if
7 possible, in addition to a crush and feel search.

8
9 (d) Stingers/caltrops (device that can be dragged across the
10 road to puncture tires).

11 (e) Vehicle control and blast mitigation barriers.

12
13 (f) Separate search areas for small and large vehicles.
14 Consider using trenches large enough for vehicles to enter so they may be searched.
15 Vehicles can pull into the ditch and open all doors prior to search.

16
17 e. Man portable air defense system threat.

18
19 The purpose of this message is to emphasize to commanders and AT officers the
20 importance of considering the man portable air defense system threat (MANPAD).

21
22 (1) The 28 November 2002 terrorist attack on an Israeli Airliner in
23 Kenya highlights the potential manpad threat to US aviation interests, both conus and
24 oconus. Commanders who own and/or are supported by air assets should consider risk
25 and make decisions to alter, divert, or cancel air missions if the MANPAD threat is too
26 great to mitigate. This is especially critical for locations transited by commercial air
27 carriers moving our forces and equipment.

28
29 (2) Air mobility command (AMC) maintains a worldwide
30 database with current intelligence and operations information that can assist
31 Commanders to reach prudent decisions pertaining to the MANPAD threat. The AMC
32 intelligence combined risk assessment database offers both automated risk assessments
33 known as the virtual threat assessor (VTA) program, and formal threat working group
34 (TWG) virtual risk assessments known as the virtual threat assessor (VTA) program, and
35 formal threat working group (TWG) virtual risk assessments. Both products offer such
36 items as airfield information, terrorist, medical, military, information operations, and
37 other threat information, along with archived briefings and open source information. The
38 web address for these products is [HTTP://WWW.AMCIN.SCOTT.AF.SMIL.MIL/VTA](http://www.amcin.scott.af.smil.mil/vta).

39
40 (3) Airfield security and local area assessments should be
41 conducted to identify the area of vulnerability to the manpad threat (in terms of possible
42 launch sites) to include the airfield arrival and departure corridors as well as potentially
43 vulnerable ground targets such as parked aircraft or ground vehicle motor pools. A
44 thorough assessment could include security forces, intelligence, counterintelligence, and
45 operational personnel as well as local/host nation authorities.

1 (a) The defense intelligence agency-missile and space
2 intelligence center has flight path threat analysis simulation (FPTAS) software that slows
3 the local commander to quantify the areas of greatest MANPAD threat. FPTAS uses
4 aircraft performance, flight path data, missile characteristics, and digital terrain elevation
5 data to generate maps depicting area from which manpads could engage U.S. and allied
6 aircraft. Commanders have used these maps to identify flight paths with minimum
7 explosure to the MANPAD threat and have adjusted take-off/landing patterns to limit
8 their explosure and utilize areas readily secured by ground troops. This software can be
9 downloaded at the following web site:

10 [HTTP://MSIC.DIA.SMIL.MIL/MS_HOME_PAGES/FPTAS/](http://msic.dia.smil.mil/ms_home_pages/fptas/).

11
12 (b) Criteria to identify possible MANPAD launch sites
13 include but are not limited to:

14
15 1. Cover and concealment – the ability of an object to
16 provide protection for the terrorist from return fire and prevent detection by security force
17 personnel.

18
19 2. Line of sight providing unobstructed view of the
20 target.

21
22 3. Explosure time – the amount of time the intended
23 target is vulnerable from an operational attack.

24
25 4. Distance to target and target recognition for the
26 terrorist to positively identify the intended target.

27
28 5. Set up time required for a terrorist fire team to get into
29 position to attack, and the time to discovery in terms of the amount of time it takes to
30 detect a fire team once their weapons are exposed.

31
32 (4) There are two areas where commanders and antiterrorism officers
33 should employ mitigation measures to counter the MANPAD threat:
34 airfields/installation defense and reducing aircraft in-flight susceptibility.

35
36 (a) The following are points to consider in developing at plans
37 in regards to airfield/installation defense and the MANPAD threat.

38
39 1. Once and analysis of possible launch sites is
40 accomplished, prime manpad launch sites and vulnerable areas can be isolated by
41 expanding the airfield area of control and reducing areas of vulnerability. The following
42 mitigation measures may require coordination with local/host nation authorities:

43
44 a. Increased physical presence at prime launch
45 sites. Visual observation of security teams is a strong deterrent.
46

1 | _____ b. focused and random patrols of vulnerable
2 | areas. Incorporate random patrols into the installation random antiterrorism measures
3 | program.

4 | _____
5 | _____ c. Implementation of technical equipment
6 | surveillance of vulnerable areas to include both launch and potential targets.

7 | _____
8 | _____ 2. Ensuring personnel are educated on the MANPAD
9 | threat (to include component recognition), areas of vulnerability, and reaction plans.
10 | Develop and provide manpad awareness training for security force personnel and
11 | local/host nation law enforcement. Develop a MANPAD awareness program for
12 | neighborhood watch groups and local business/installation facilities in close proximity to
13 | airfields or along flight paths. The Defense Intelligence Agency Missile and Space
14 | Intelligence Center has a web site in their enduring freedom section that has a
15 | MANPADS link that is a good source for information on MANPAD systems
16 | ([HTTP://MSIC.DIA.SMIL.MIL/MS_HOME_PAGES/SAM/SD_HOME_PAGES3.HTM](http://msic.dia.smil.mil/ms_home_pages/sam/sd_home_pages3.htm)
17 | L).

18 | _____
19 | _____ 3. Ensuring tight airfield access control procedures are in
20 | place for air field operations. Consider dispersal of parked aircraft to reduce damage
21 | from a MANPAD or rocket propelled grenade attack.

22 | _____
23 | _____ 4. Developing and exercising contingency plans for
24 | responding to an incident of a manpad threat. Rapid reaction plans will facilitate the
25 | immediate capture of a terrorist team, even post attack, to deter/prevent future attacks and
26 | ease concern for air travel safety by the public at large.

27 | _____
28 | _____ (b) The following are points to consider in developing AT
29 | plans to reduce aircraft in flight susceptibility due to the MANPAD threat.

30 | _____
31 | _____ 1. Establishing airfield specific procedures for the use of
32 | aircrew tactical countermeasures and/or tactics. Development and dissemination may
33 | require coordination with local/host nation authorities. Ensure aircrew awareness of
34 | possible effects of MANPAD on their aircraft. Ensure aircrews and flight operations are
35 | tied into the AMC intelligence combined risk assessment database to obtain current
36 | information on airfield security assessments.

37 | _____
38 | _____ 2. Varying arrival and departure times of aircraft.
39 | Stagger the arrival times of normal scheduled missions to make arrival, departure, and
40 | ground times harder to predict for the terrorist.

41 | _____
42 | _____ 3. Randomly changing approach and departure routes as
43 | a deterrent (in accordance with current federal aviation administration guidelines).

44 | _____
45 | _____ 4. Limiting or discontinue use of landing lights within
46 | identified threat zones to reduce heat producing/targeting options.

1
2
3
4
5
6
7

5. In high threat areas or when intelligence has indicated a high alert status, coordinating and developing plans for engine-running offloads to minimize ground time.

- 1 |
- 2
- 3
- 4
- 5
- 6
- 7
- 8
- 9
- 10
- 11
- 12
- 13
- 14
- 15
- 16
- 17
- 18
- 19
- 20
- 21
- 22

Intentionally Blank

1 CHAPTER VII
2 **TERRORIST INCIDENT RESPONSE AND TERRORISM CONSEQUENCE**
3 **MANAGEMENT**

"If historical experience teaches us anything about revolutionary guerrilla war, it is that military measures alone will not suffice."

Bgen S.B. Griffith, USMC
Introduction to Mao Tse-tung on Guerrilla Warfare, 1961

4
5 **1. General**

6
7 a. Terrorist Incident Response Management is a sequence of command, staff,
8 and first responder actions to respond to a terrorist incident or other unique event and
9 restore AT capability. The primary objective of Terrorist Incident Response
10 Management is to limit the effects and number of casualties resulting from a terrorist
11 attack. Commanders develop response measures to save lives, preserve health and safety,
12 secure and eliminate the hazard, protect property, prevent further damage to the
13 installation, and maintain public confidence in the installation's ability to respond to a
14 terrorist incident.

15
16 b. Terrorism Consequence Management

17
18 ~~bc.~~ A commander's responsibility and authority to enforce security measures
19 and to protect persons and property is paramount during any level of conflict. As such, it
20 is incumbent upon the commander to plan for, and be capable of reacting to, a terrorist
21 attack. ~~If the attack involves a chemical, biological, radiological, nuclear or high-yield~~
22 ~~explosive device, the number of casualties and the extent of the areas involved may~~
23 ~~quickly overwhelm organic resources.~~ Attacks employing CBRNE weapons may
24 produce massive casualties or widespread destruction, which can quickly overwhelm
25 organic resources. This situation is covered in more detail later in section paragraph 5.

26
27 ~~ed. This Chapter addresses management of a terrorist incident.~~ The focus of
28 incident management is on the organic assets of an installation, ship, or base and the
29 ability to cope with the situation using organic assets until outside assistance arrives.
30 DODI 2000.16, ~~DoD Antiterrorism Standards~~, requires all commanders to prepare
31 installation-wide terrorist incident response measures and include them in the AT plan.
32 The terrorist incident response measures should include procedures for determining the
33 nature and scope of incidence response; procedures for coordinating security, fire, and
34 medical first responders; and steps to reconstitute the installation's ability to perform AT
35 measures.

36
37 ~~de.~~ There are an unlimited number of potential terrorist incidents requiring a
38 response. Developing separate courses of action for each is an unrealistic task. To
39 prepare for the most probable, or likely threats, AT Plans should address (at an absolute
40 minimum) each potential threat identified through the Threat Assessment Process.

1 Additionally, broad category threat response plans should be developed in order to
2 provide an initial response to threats not yet identified through the Threat Assessment
3 Process.
4
5

6 **2. Terrorist Incident Management Planning**

7

8 a. The establishment of a mechanism to respond to a terrorist incident is an
9 essential element of the ~~DOD CbT Program~~ DOD AT program. Normally, the
10 installation, base, or unit commander identifies an office or section, or designates
11 personnel from various sections, who act as the principal planning agency for special
12 threats and who comprise the Emergency Operations Center (EOC) (see paragraph 3.d.)
13 during an actual crisis. One effective method for determining what areas should
14 comprise the planning and execution of the response is to use the WMD response
15 functions.
16

17 b. There is no requirement to have a separate terrorist incident management
18 plan. However, DODI 2000.16 requires that the AT Plan address terrorist incident
19 response measures.
20

21 **3. Initial Response**

22

23 a. Onset of a Terrorist Incident: The onset of a terrorist incident begins with the
24 detection of an unlawful act of violence or threatened violence. Detection may result
25 from routine surveillance performed by an installation or facility intrusion detection
26 system, guard or security force, an unusual incidence of an infectious disease in the case
27 of bioterrorism, or aware vigilant DOD-affiliated or community persons. Once detection
28 of a criminal act occurs, first responding security or law enforcement personnel must
29 perform an initial assessment.
30

31 b. Initial Response Force

32

33 (1) ~~On-duty Security Forces/Military Police patrols or guard personnel~~
34 ~~usually provide initial response to a terrorist attack. The initial response force is usually~~
35 ~~under the control of the on-scene senior officer or noncommissioned officer assuming~~
36 ~~responsibility. The initial Response Force consists of the forces identified in the~~
37 ~~installation's/ship's terrorist response plans with on-scene command relationships and~~
38 ~~chain of command clearly established in the same sources.~~ At facilities controlled by the
39 Defense Agencies, the initial response force may be under the control of a senior civilian
40 security or DOD law enforcement official. Once the initial response force has responded
41 to the incident and determined the circumstances, the installation commander should
42 activate required forces and begin notification procedures for military and civilian
43 authorities.
44

45 (2) The initial response force should immediately identify and report
46 the nature of the situation, isolate the incident, and contain the situation until relieved by
47 the reaction force commander. Initial response force actions are critical. ~~Each~~ Every

1 shift ~~of the daily security force~~ must have trained personnel who are aware of the threat
2 and are capable of reacting promptly to any new development.

3
4 (3) For example, if the attack is a bombing, ambush, assassination, or
5 firebombing, the terrorists may escape before additional forces arrive. In these cases, the
6 initial response force should provide medical aid, seal off the crime scene, and secure
7 other potential targets in case the initial attack was a diversionary tactic. If the event is a
8 hostage/barricade situation, the initial response force should seal off and isolate the
9 incident scene to ensure no one enters or leaves the area. The initial response force must
10 also be prepared to locate witnesses and direct them to a safe location for debriefing. ~~For~~
11 ~~foreign incidents,~~ ~~†~~The initial response force must also be prepared to interface with local
12 law enforcement or emergency service personnel, host nation police, or military forces
13 ~~that may also be~~ responding to the incident. in accordance with existing Host Nation
14 Support Memorandums of Agreement and/or Status of Forces Agreements:

15
16 c. Installation/Base Commander. The installation/base commander, depending
17 upon established standing operating procedures (SOPs) should activate the installation's
18 EOC. Additionally, the commander should notify specialized response forces, and
19 immediately report the incident to the appropriate superior military command EOC,
20 military investigative agency, FBI, civilian authorities, and if a foreign incident, to host
21 nation authorities and the US Embassy, as required.

22
23 d. Emergency Operations Center

24
25 (1) The EOC serves as the command post ~~at a predetermined~~ location.
26 Communications are established immediately with the initial response force containing
27 the situation, the specially trained operational response force preparing to take over or
28 augment the initial response force, and other critical participants ~~as pre-designated~~ in the
29 EOC's SOPs. There are usually three standard secure communications circuits:
30 command net (administrative matters, support, routine traffic), tactical net (operations),
31 and intelligence net. If necessary, a dedicated net for negotiations may be necessary if a
32 landline cannot be established with the terrorist.

33
34 (2) The EOC should distribute responsibilities into four basic
35 functions:

36
37 (a) Operations. Responsible for first responders (fire,
38 security, and medical); hazardous materials; bioenvironmental engineering; safety; and
39 public affairs.

40
41 (b) Logistics. Responsible for service (communications,
42 power, food) and support (shelters, supplies, etc.).

43
44 (c) Planning. Responsible for amending and developing plans
45 to address the changing circumstances.

46

1 (d) Administration. Responsible for tracking personnel
2 casualties or fatalities, notifications, report, and contracting services as necessary.
3

4 e. Confirmation
5

6 (1) Since jurisdiction depends on whether the incident is terrorist
7 related, it is important for the response force to identify the type of incident as quickly as
8 possible. If the FBI or host nation assumes control, then the response force must be
9 prepared to coordinate the operational handover and assist as needed.
10

11 (2) The initial or specialized response forces may be required to
12 provide outer perimeter security as well as be prepared to manage the entire event. They
13 must also be prepared to turn over responsibility for resolving the incident to ~~host~~
14 ~~government~~ HN security forces if overseas or the FBI if within the United States and in
15 the event the FBI seeks to exercise jurisdiction over the containment and resolution
16 phases of the incident. These installation/base forces must always prepare for the most
17 resource-demanding contingency. This level of readiness requires considerable
18 sustainment training.
19

20 f. DOD installation military commanders and civilian managers have
21 responsibility and authority for initial response, containment, and resolution of criminal
22 incidents that occur on DOD facilities under their control prior to relinquishing that
23 authority to the appropriate jurisdictional lead agency. In all cases, however, command
24 of military elements remains within military channels. For detailed discussion on
25 jurisdiction, authority, responsibilities, and other legal considerations concerning
26 response to criminal incidents, see Chapter IV and Appendix J.
27

28 **4. Follow-on Response**
29

30 The response to a terrorist incident varies depending on the nature and location
31 of the incident. Generally there are three distinct phases through which an incident may
32 evolve although many incidents do not develop beyond the first phase.
33

34 a. Phase I: Locally Available Resources. Phase I is the commitment of locally
35 available resources, including available Security Forces/Military Police patrols or guards
36 and available backup units. Civilian contract guard services should not be used as part of
37 an initial response force for a terrorist incident unless there is no Federal law enforcement
38 or Security Forces/Military Police available. Civilian contract guard services should
39 generally be restricted to perimeter security duties, traffic control, and crowd control
40 activities. All initial responders, such as fire as fire and medical personnel must
41 understand and be trained to protect the incident location as a crime scene within
42 established protocols. Ideally, all law enforcement or security personnel are familiar with
43 local SOPs for terrorist incidents and have practiced these procedures as part of their unit-
44 training program. They must be prepared to secure, contain, and gather information at
45 the scene until the beginning of Phase II. While securing and containing the incident
46 scene, response forces must be alert to the fact terrorist incidents often include

1 diversionary tactics and secondary attacks with the desired purpose of harming first
2 responder personnel. The evacuation of threatened areas is a high priority function.
3

4 b. Phase II: Augmentation of Initial Response Force. Phase II is the
5 augmentation of the initial response force by additional law enforcement/security
6 personnel and/or a specially trained response force, such as Special Reaction Team
7 (SRT)/Emergency Service Team (EST), FBI hostage rescue teams, or host nation tactical
8 units. On many installations, the initial response force and the augmentation force are
9 essentially the same. This phase begins when the EOC is activated. During this phase,
10 either the FBI or the host nation may assume control jurisdiction over the incident. If that
11 occurs, installation forces must be ready to support the operation. The installation
12 specially trained response force must be ready for employment in this phase of the
13 operation. In any country that a terrorist incident against an American facility/unit
14 occurs, the DOS and the US Embassy shall play the key role in coordinating the US
15 Government and host country response to such an incident.
16

17 c. Phase III: Commitment of Counter-Terrorist Resources. Phase III is the
18 commitment of a specialized team from the FBI, the Department of Defense, or host
19 nation counter-terrorist force. In this phase, steps are taken to terminate the incident.
20 Incident termination may be the result of successful negotiations, assault, or other
21 actions, including the surrender of the terrorists. Because identifying the terrorists, as
22 opposed to the hostages, may be difficult, it is important that the capturing forces handle
23 and secure all initial captives as possible terrorists.
24
25



26
27 *Joint forces must be prepared to play an active security role throughout*
28 *all three terrorist incident phases.*
29

30 **5. Initial Response to a CBRNE Attack**

31
32 a. Installations have the requirement for an immediate response capability to
33 ensure critical mission continuity and save lives during a CBRNE incident and to

1 mitigate the situation (DOD Instruction 2000.18, *Department of Defense Installation*
2 *Chemical, Biological, Radiological, Nuclear, and High-Yield Explosive Emergency*
3 *Response Guidelines*). National-level responders may not be immediately accessible ~~nor~~
4 available to respond to an installation's needs. Therefore, each installation must plan for
5 the worst-case scenario by tailoring its response for each functional area, based on its
6 organic resources and available local support through MOAs/MOUs. The situation may
7 dictate that the installation not only conducts the initial response, but also sustains
8 response operations.

9
10 b. In the event of a terrorist CBRNE incident, the commander should direct the
11 following complementary sets of actions:

12
13 ~~(1) Activate mass notification telling personnel to shelter in place,~~
14 ~~evacuate or take other appropriate action.~~

15
16 ~~(+2)~~ . Activate the installation's initial response elements and local
17 MOAs / MOUs.

18
19 ~~(23)~~ Initiate the DOD notification process; and

20
21 ~~(34)~~ Request resources to augment the installation's response
22 capabilities.

23
24 c. Installation commanders are responsible for ensuring their first responders
25 have a plan and are equipped, trained, and exercised on the plan for responding to an
26 incident involving CBRNE.

27
28 d. Installations are required to have incident management plans. One effective
29 way to develop these plans is by the use of weapons of mass destruction response
30 functions (WMDRFs). The WMDRFs parallel the national-level FEMA Emergency
31 Support Functions (ESFs) to the greatest degree possible. This parallelism ~~shall ensure~~
32 ~~ensures~~ that if there is a need for Federal assistance, incoming support can easily
33 transition into the appropriate functional areas on the installation. The Installation
34 Antiterrorism Program and Planning Tool (IPPT) uses the WMDRFs to systematically
35 address each of the installation response functional areas. From these Response
36 Measures, the installation planners should create installation specific action sets or
37 implementation instructions. These action sets should include who, what, when, where,
38 and how the lead staff element shall carry out the response measure. Once planners have
39 carefully prepared discrete actions sets, it is recommended they be placed in a response
40 matrix.

41
42 e. Terrorist CBRNE incidents, or threats of terrorist CBRNE acts, may
43 overwhelm an installation's minimum capability to adequately detect, assess, or contain
44 the threat. The Department of Defense, like most other local, State, or Federal entities,
45 has neither the authority nor the expertise to respond unilaterally to all aspects of terrorist
46 CBRNE threats or acts. ~~The tenets of the National Response Plan shall help an~~

~~installation develop its response based on crisis and consequence management.~~

6. Special Considerations (see figure VII-1)

a. Establishing Communications. A crucial aspect of implementing the AT plan is establishing secure communications among the forces in the incident area and the EOC. Once this is done, all other elements of the communications plan are activated. Communications personnel must be able to respond to changing needs during the incident and be able to maintain, over a prolonged period, the communications channels included in the AT plan.

b. Evidence. Although the primary goal is ending a terrorist incident without injury, another goal is the successful prosecution of terrorists. Witness testimony, photographic evidence, etc., are important in achieving a successful prosecution. Maintaining the continuous chain of custody on evidence obtained during an incident requires documenting the location, control, and possession of the evidence from the time custody is established until presenting the evidence in court. Failure to maintain the chain can result in exclusion of the evidence. Types of evidence for which the chain must be established include, but are not limited to:

(1) Photographs taken during the incident.

(2) Physical evidence, including any item(s) used by the terrorists.

(3) Tape recordings of conversations between terrorists and hostage negotiators.

(4) Demand notes or other messages recorded by written, audio, or video means prepared by the terrorists.

(5) Sample collection, including samples collected at the scene taken during initial and follow-on response.

c. Disposition of Apprehended Personnel. Apprehended military personnel must be handled according to Service regulations and applicable installation SOPs. In the ~~U.S.-US~~, civilian detainees must be released to the FBI or US Federal Marshals for disposition. In foreign incidents, civilian detainees may be processed according to the SOFA, diplomatic note (DIPNOTE), or other agreements with that particular country. The Staff Judge Advocate should be consulted prior to releasing any individual to Host Nation authorities. In coordination with the Staff Judge Advocate (SJA), an after-action report should be prepared within 7 seven working days after termination of the event.

d. Reports. Reporting to higher headquarters is an important element in any special threat or terrorist situation. Each Service and command has a reporting procedure that requires a timely report of the incident to higher military authorities. The crisis management plan should dictate required reports and timelines for notification. An after-

1 action report should be prepared within seven working days after termination of the
2 event. This should include all staff journals and other documentation to include detailed
3 information concerning disposition of evidence and captured individuals. The SJA and
4 law enforcement personnel should ensure this report is in sufficient detail to meet
5 prosecution requirements.

6
7 e. Public Affairs (PA). Principal PA objectives of a terrorist incident crisis
8 management plan are to ensure accurate information is provided to the public (including
9 news media) and to communicate a calm, measured and reasonable reaction to the
10 ongoing event.

11
12 (1) PA programs should attempt to:

13
14 (a) Identify terrorist activities, as criminal acts not worthy of
15 public support.

16
17 (b) Reiterate US policy on terrorism that identifies all terrorist
18 acts as criminal acts, mandates no concessions to terrorists, refuses to pay ransom, and
19 isolates those nations identified as encouraging, supporting or directing terrorism; and

20
21 (c) Support DOD PA strategy on releasing information
22 pertaining to antiterrorism plans, operations, or forces involved in antiterrorist operations.

23
24 (2) The DOJ has lead PA responsibility for incidents occurring on US
25 territory if the FBI assumes jurisdiction for resolving the incident. The Office of the
26 Assistant Secretary of Defense (Public Affairs) (OASD (PA)) supports the DOJ in
27 providing specific PA support.

28
29 (3) When US military ~~forces security or combating terrorism forces~~ are
30 employed, the ~~Department of Defense~~DOD provides a spokesman for ~~addressing dealing~~
31 ~~only with security or combating terrorism forces~~ military operational matters.

32
33 (4) The DOS coordinates PA during terrorist incidents overseas. The
34 DOS may delegate the PA responsibility to a designated DOD representative.

35
36 (5) The OASD (PA) is the single point of contact for all PA aspects of
37 US military CbT actions. While there is no mandatory requirement to release
38 information, installation commanders are advised to exercise prudent judgment on such
39 matters and coordinate actions through PA channels to OASD (PA).

40
41 (6) When the EOC is activated, it should include the activities of the
42 public affairs officer (PAO) and media center. The media center should be located in a
43 separate location away from the EOC. The PAO shall prepare media releases and
44 conduct briefings at the media center during the incident. The PAO shall use information
45 obtained from EOC activities. PA shall coordinate with EOC personnel, and clear all
46 information with the commander, prior to release. The PAO must be fully

1 knowledgeable of the situation as it develops. The media representatives should not have
2 direct access to hostages, hostage takers, communications nets, or anyone directly
3 involved in a terrorist incident unless the PAO has cleared such contact with the EOC.
4 DOD experience with media representatives has shown that bringing them in early under
5 reasonable conditions and restrictions commensurate with the risk and gravity of the
6 event, and providing them thorough briefings, maintains DOD credibility and preserves
7 freedom of information.

8
9 f. Immediate Post-Incident Actions. During the immediate post-incident phase,
10 medical and psychological attention, along with other support services, should be given
11 to all personnel involved in the operation, including captured terrorists. A final briefing
12 should be given to media personnel; however, they should not be permitted to visit the
13 incident site until the investigation is complete and such access is cleared by appropriate
14 officials. Because of the criminal nature of the terrorist event, the site must be secured
15 until the crime scene investigation is completed by the appropriate investigative agency.
16 It is also imperative to record every action that occurred during the incident.

17

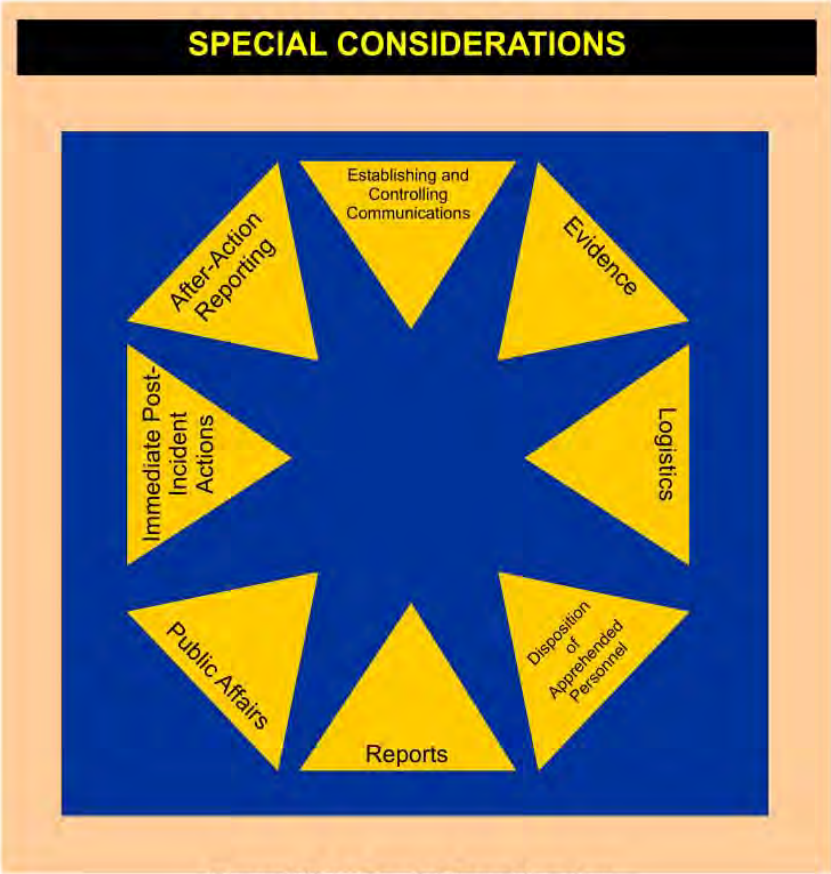


Figure VII-1. Special Considerations

18
19
20
21
22

1
2
3
4
5
6
7
8
9
10
11
12
13
14
15
16
17
18
19
20
21
22
23

Intentionally Blank

1
2
3
4
5
6
7
8
9
10
11
12
13
14
15
16
17
18
19
20
21
22
23
24
25
26
27
28
29
30
31
32
33
34
35
36
37
38
39
40
41
42
43
44
45
46

APPENDIX A THREAT ASSESSMENT

1. Introduction and Overview

The AT Risk Management process begins with an assessment of the terrorist threat to DOD personnel and facilities. The AT Threat Assessment is used to identify the terrorist threats posed to DOD assets and/or the threats that could be encountered in executing a mission.

2. Terrorist Threat Assessment

a. The threat assessment system is vital to developing and disseminating terrorism warnings. Specific warning information - time, date, place, those involved, and method of attack - is rarely voluntarily provided by terrorists. Careful threat analysis is required to detect and correctly evaluate pre-incident indicators of a terrorist attack, so timely warning messages can be issued.

b. Threat analysis provides the intelligence officer with information upon which to base warnings.

c. Threat information for AT programs is diverse and includes foreign intelligence, open source materials, domestic criminal information, and information from federal, state, and local governments.

(1) Open source and publicly available information may be collected, retained, and disseminated as prescribed in Executive Order 12333, *United States Intelligence Activities*, DOD 5240.1-R, *Procedures Governing the Activities of DoD Intelligence Components That Affect United States Persons*, and DOD Directive 5200.27, *Acquisition Of Information Concerning Persons And Organizations Not Affiliated With The Department Of Defense*. Organizations engaging in these activities must ensure they are properly authorized to do so. Examples of open source material include:

(a) News media (print and broadcast) may provide good information on terrorism. News organizations often are the first to report many major terrorist incidents and include in-depth reports on terrorist individuals or groups. Such reports can provide analysts with insights into terrorist group goals and objectives, the motivation of individual members of terrorist organizations, modes of recruitment, training and training methods, and tactics of attack. Terrorist groups frequently use the media to promote their cause.

(b) Scholarly publications.

(c) Unclassified US and foreign government publications.

(d) Press releases.

1
2 (e) Political tracts, handbills, posters, flyers, and leaflets often
3 distributed by organizations committing, supporting, or opposing terrorist actions may
4 reveal their objectives, tactics, and possible targets. Such information is often placed into
5 the public domain as part of a campaign of terror.

6
7 (f) The World Wide Web (Internet) provides terrorists an outlet to
8 spread propaganda, recruit new members, and aid in fundraising. In addition, the web
9 provides a wealth of information to include: training and training methods, weapons, and
10 weapons usage. Only specially trained counterintelligence personnel should access these
11 sites. Terrorist organizations have shown increased sophistication in the area of
12 information warfare and casual visits to their sites may inadvertently provide them
13 intelligence information on who may be interested in their activities and/or expose the
14 untrained visitor to a computer hacker attack.

15
16 (2) Commercial data services may offer timely information about
17 international or military affairs that often include information regarding terrorist
18 incidents. Such data services often rely on foreign news media. Some data services
19 maintain their own network of sources. Information services are provided on a
20 subscription or fee-for-service basis.

21
22 (3) The Defense Criminal Investigative Organizations (DCIOs) and
23 military and civil law enforcement agencies collect criminal information. Since terrorist
24 acts are criminal acts, criminal information is a lucrative source for terrorist intelligence.
25 Local military criminal investigative offices maintain current information in accordance
26 with DOD regulations governing retention of criminal information. Such material may
27 assist managers and military commanders in the assessment of the local terrorist threat.

28
29 (4) Government information refers to materials collected, analyzed,
30 and disseminated under official auspices. It includes, but is not limited to, scientific and
31 technical reports, political and economic reports, crime and terrorism statistics, policy
32 statements, legislation, and official correspondence.

33
34 (a) Some government information may be open source, available
35 to all persons who either request or purchase it.

36
37 (b) Government information may also be restricted or have limited
38 distribution only within government agencies. Such information might include post-
39 conviction court records, export/import license applications, immigration records, or
40 financial securities registration information not released to the public.

41
42 (c) Government information also includes data and analyses
43 derived from intelligence classified sources. Exchanges with local government agencies
44 through, for example, "cooperative arrangements" can also augment regional
45 information.

46

1 (5) Local information can come from individual service members, civil
2 servants, family members, and individuals with regional knowledge, such as college
3 faculty or cultural organizations. Local crime or neighborhood watch programs can also
4 be valuable sources of information and can serve as a means to keep individuals informed
5 in dispersed and remote areas.

6
7 (a) Local information is often of critical importance as it is
8 collected and passed through either law enforcement and/or intelligence channels to the
9 national intelligence organizations. It is frequently invaluable to analysts confirming
10 news media or other open source accounts of terrorist activities. It can provide early
11 warning of potential terrorist activities, allowing law enforcement and combating
12 terrorism measures to be initiated in a timely manner to thwart or minimize the effects of
13 a terrorist attack.

14
15 (b) A critical element of local information is obtained from
16 individual service members, their families, and civilian employees at DOD facilities who
17 report any suspicious activity they observe. It is critical that all these personnel receive
18 frequent, thorough training regarding the recognition and reporting of suspicious activity.
19 Such reports, even those that may appear frivolous, must receive immediate investigation
20 by law enforcement and counterintelligence personnel.

21
22 d. Access to Intelligence

23
24 (1) Terrorist threat information flows back and forth in the field, and
25 among the combatant commanders, the Services, and the DIA. At each level, it is
26 integrated, fused, and assessed in accordance with regulations and DOD Directives
27 governing the security and dissemination of intelligence and law enforcement
28 information. Terrorist threat information and analytical products are also disseminated
29 from the national, DOD, Service, Agency, and combatant commander levels to all
30 echelons of command and individual Defense Agency activities as appropriate.

31
32 (2) The combatant commanders, through their Intelligence Directorates
33 and Counterintelligence Staff Officer, and in consultation with the DIA, embassies'
34 staffs, country team, and applicable host nation authorities, assess intelligence specific to
35 their areas of operation responsibility and issue intelligence reports, advisories, and
36 counter intelligence reports to the units within the combatant commander's control or
37 AOR. This intelligence dissemination network is the backbone for communicating
38 intelligence information throughout the region and to the national level.

39
40 **3. Terrorism Threat Level Assessment Methodology**

41
42 a. This DOD methodology assesses the terrorist threat to DOD personnel,
43 facilities, and interests. The methodology is used by all DOD Components to determine
44 the level of terrorist activity in a specific country, region, or locale. This methodology
45 does not address threats from conventional forms (i.e., hostile conventional armed forces)
46 and/or the criminal threat (if unrelated to known or suspected terrorist activity).

1
2 (1) Threat levels are assigned based on available intelligence and an
3 analytical assessment.

4
5 (2) Threat levels describe an environment, not a probability of attack.

6
7 (3) Terrorist threat levels do not allocate protective resources.

8
9 (4) Issuance of a Terrorist Threat Level judgment is not, in and of
10 itself, a formal warning vehicle.

11
12 b. Threat analysis is the process of compiling and examining all available
13 information to develop intelligence indicators of possible terrorist activities.

14
15 c. The Department of Defense has identified several factors to identify the
16 collection and analysis of information from all sources concerning terrorist threat(s).
17 These factors are used in making terrorist threat analyses on a country-by-country basis.

18
19 d. Methodology Factors

20
21 (1) Operational Capability is the acquired, assessed, or demonstrated
22 level of operational capability to conduct terrorist attacks.

23
24 (a) Group Tactics focuses on the attack methods used by the
25 group. What type of attack has the group conducted in the past? Has the group
26 conducted large or small-scale bombings, kidnappings, assassinations, drive-by
27 shootings, or other assaults? Has there been any indication the group has any new
28 capabilities? Has the group been notably unsuccessful in any types of attacks?

29
30 (b) Mass Casualty Capability/Willingness. Does the group have
31 the capability and willingness to conduct mass casualty attacks? Has the group
32 conducted such attacks in the past? Has the group shown an interest in CBRNE material?

33
34 (c) Targeting. Does the group conduct attacks intended to
35 maximize casualties, i.e., conducting an attack at peak business times, or placing
36 secondary improvised explosive devices to target first responders? Does the group
37 attempt to limit damage to property only, by placing IEDs after business hours or in
38 remote locations?

39
40 (d) State Sponsorship. Does the group have state sponsorship?
41 Who is the state sponsor? What type of intelligence/logistics/training/funding is
42 provided? Is support from one or more Governments? If so, which ones?

43
44 (e) Group's Operating Area. Is the group indigenous, regional, or
45 transnational? Can indigenous groups operate regionally or transnationally?
46

1 (f) High Technology Access. Does the group have access to high
2 technology? Does the group use computers? If yes, to what extent? Can the group
3 conduct sophisticated technical surveillance or employ advanced IEDs? What type of
4 equipment is used? Where did the group get the equipment? Who trained the group?
5

6 (g) Method of Operation. What is the group's method of
7 operation? A group shall likely continue to use techniques and tactics that have been
8 successful in the past.
9

10 (h) Professionalism. What is the group's overall professionalism?
11 Has the group consistently carried out successful sophisticated attacks? Has the group
12 demonstrated a high or low degree of tradecraft?
13

14 (i) Different Tactics Equate to Different Threats. Different tactics
15 result in different degrees of threat. A group that conducts property attacks presents less
16 of a threat than one that has conducted assassinations or attacks with large vehicle borne
17 IEDs.
18

19 (2) Intentions are the stated and/or the actual history of attacking US
20 interests.
21

22 (a) Recent Attacks. Has the group conducted a recent terrorist
23 attack? Type of attack? Weapons type? Were any pre-incident indicators noted? Was
24 outside support used? Did the group claim the attack?
25

26 (b) Anti-US Ideology. Does the group have an anti-US ideology?
27 Is the ideology stated publicly? What is the group's main opposing points with the US?
28 What trigger events could entice the group to act?
29

30 (c) Anti-Host Nation Ideology. Does the group have an anti-host
31 nation ideology? Does the group consider US aid/support a hindrance to its goals? At
32 what point would the group consider attacking US interests due to this support?
33

34 (d) Attacks in Other Countries. Has the group conducted terrorist
35 attacks in other countries? Where? What type of attack? What type of support network
36 was in place?
37

38 (e) Response to Current International Events. Has the group ever
39 responded to an international event with a terrorist attack? What was the event? What
40 type of response? Has the group ever publicly denounced an international event
41 involving the US? Did they threaten US interests?
42

43 (3) Activity. A terrorist group's activity in a country may not always
44 be related to operational planning or present a threat to US/host nation interests. Many
45 groups use countries as support bases and may not want to jeopardize their status by
46 conducting a terrorist act there. Analysts must determine the group's activity by

1 examining influencing elements and keeping in mind that the situation is always fluid and
2 subject to change. Some of the key elements in evaluating activity are:

3
4 (a) Presence. Is a group present but inactive?

5
6 (b) Fund-raising and Safe Haven. Does the group use the country
7 for fund raising? What type of fund raising? How much money is generated? What is
8 its intended use? Is any of the money funneled to other locations or groups? Does the
9 group use a country as a safe haven?

10
11 (c) Suspected Surveillance, Threats, and Suspicious Incidents.
12 Has the group been known to conduct surveillance? Is the group proficient at
13 surveillance? What does the group do with the surveillance information? Has the group
14 threatened DOD/US interests? How does the group conduct surveillance? Have there
15 been any suspicious events that could be linked to the group?

16
17 (d) Changes in Philosophy Impacting Targeting. Has the group
18 shown any signs of changing philosophies? Does the philosophical change include
19 targets? Is the Department of Defense affected?

20
21 (e) Level of Involvement with External Cells. How does the local
22 leadership interact with external leadership? How much contact is normal? Does the
23 group have connections with other cells? Do the cells train together? Do they share
24 intelligence?

25
26 (f) Key Operative Movement. Has there been any noted
27 movement of key operatives? If so, from where to where? Was the movement covert?
28 Was there any reaction from other cells? What was the purpose of movement? Were
29 code words used?

30
31 (g) Contingency Planning. Has any planning been noted?
32 Who/what are the targets? How were past plans executed? Who conducted the
33 planning? Was outside help used/requested? Did any attacks occur after planning was
34 noted? How much time elapsed?

35
36 (h) Disruptions by US or Host Nation Security Elements. Have
37 US or host nation security forces disrupted any of the group's activities? If host nation
38 only, does the group perceive US involvement? What caused the disruption? What was
39 uncovered by security? How does it affect the group's operational capability in country?

40
41 (i) Identification of Weapons Caches. Have weapons caches been
42 uncovered? What types of weapons? Are the weapons consistent with the group's past
43 weapons usage? Who supplied the weapons?

44

1 (j) Cell Activity (Operational or Support). What type of activity
2 does the group mainly conduct in country? Operational? Support? Size of cells?
3 Number of cells?
4

5 (k) Credible Indications of Targeting US Assets. Is there any
6 indication the group is targeting US assets? At what stage of the targeting process was
7 the plan uncovered? Timing? Specific target? Location?
8

9 (l) Assessment of Intelligence Reporting Regarding Terrorist
10 Activity. What type of intelligence is being reported (Signal Intelligence [SIGINT],
11 HUMINT, etc.)? Source of reporting? Reliability? Access?
12

13 (4) Operating Environment. How the overall environment, to include
14 political and security considerations, influences a terrorist group's ability and motivation
15 to conduct an attack. Influencing factors include:
16

17 (a) DOD Presence. What is the DOD presence in the country?
18 Size? Location? Duration of stay? What are DOD personnel doing in country (training,
19 support, security, etc.)? What is the terrorist perception of DOD significance? How
20 politically sensitive is the DOD presence? What could entice the terrorists to attack DOD
21 interests?
22

23 (b) External Influencing Factors. Is the host country at war?
24 Could this influence a terrorist group to attack? Is there active insurrection? Is the
25 terrorist group involved in the insurrection?
26

27 (c) Host Nation Security and Level of Cooperation. Can host
28 nation security (to include national law enforcement, paramilitary and military
29 institutions) maintain social order? How well are security forces trained to respond to
30 terrorist incidents? Type of equipment available for security forces? How are forces
31 dispersed around the country? Does host nation cooperate with US authorities? Does
32 host nation share information?
33

34 (d) Political Influences Affecting Motivation to Attack. What
35 political influences are affecting the group's motivation to attack? Has host nation
36 cracked down after previous terrorist acts?
37

38 **4. Terrorist Threat Level**

39

40 a. The Department of Defense uses four threat levels to define the degree to
41 which the environment is conducive to conducting terrorist operations in a specific
42 country, region or locale by using the factors and elements described above. The four
43 threat levels are Negligible, Low, Medium, High, and Critical.
44

1 (1) High. Anti-US terrorists are operationally active and use large
2 casualty producing attacks as their preferred method of operation. There is a substantial
3 DOD presence and the operating environment favors the terrorist.

4
5 (2) Significant. Anti-US terrorists are present and attack personnel as
6 their preferred method of operation or a group uses large casualty producing attacks as
7 their preferred method but has limited operational activity. The operating environment is
8 neutral.

9
10 (3) Moderate. Terrorists are present but there are no indications of
11 anti-US activity. The operating environment favors the Host Nation/US

12
13 (4) Low. No group is detected or the group activity is non-threatening.

14
15 b. A Terrorism Warning is issued when credible specific targeting information
16 is obtained and is formally linked to the methodology (see paragraph 7).

17
18 c. Warning Report. A report issued by the DIA when a terrorist group is
19 operationally active and US interests are specifically targeted. A warning report may be
20 issued at any threat level (see paragraph 7).

21 22 **5. Changes in Terrorist Threat Level Declarations**

23
24 a. Analysis of terrorism is an ongoing process. Although each analysis relies on
25 information included in previous assessments, judgments with respect to threats to DOD-
26 affiliated personnel, facilities, and assets begin anew with each analysis. No formal
27 escalation ladder of terrorist threat level exists. Terrorist threat level designations for
28 each country are applied on the basis of current information analysis.

29
30 b. The DIA sets the DOD Terrorism Threat Level in a particular country. The
31 geographic combatant commanders can also set terrorism threat levels for specific
32 personnel, family members, units, and installations within their AOR, using the
33 definitions established by the DIA. Terrorist threat level designations can change without
34 passing through any intermediate steps. A new terrorist group could initiate a series of
35 attacks on DOD personnel or facilities, which could cause a threat level to rise several
36 levels or initiate a Warning Report.

37
38 c. Terrorism threat levels should not be confused with FPCONs. An FPCON is
39 a security posture promulgated by the commander in consideration of a variety of factors
40 (e.g., a terrorism threat assessment, terrorism threat levels, etc.). Terrorism threat levels
41 should also not be confused with the Threat Conditions associated with the National
42 Homeland Security Advisory System.

43 44 **6. Threat Warnings**

1 a. Terrorist threat warnings for the Department of Defense use two
2 mechanisms: Community Alerts/Advisories/Assessments and Defense Terrorism
3 Warning Reports. The Intelligence community system issues coordinated Terrorist
4 Threat Alerts, Advisories, and Assessments. The DIA is a member of the national
5 intelligence community along with the FBI, the CIA, the NSA, the Department of
6 Energy, the Department of Treasury, the Department of Homeland Security, and the
7 Department of State. The Interagency Intelligence Committee on Counterterrorism is
8 authorized to provide national-level terrorism warnings to US government organizations
9 and customers. The Department of Homeland Security is responsible for disseminating
10 terrorist threat warnings for attacks in the homeland. DIA is charged with assessing and
11 disseminating terrorism threat warnings concerning DOD personnel and facilities, both
12 domestically and overseas, to DOD personnel.

13
14 b. The DOD Defense Indications and Warning System (DIWS) comprises a
15 second, independent system in which DOD members at any level may initiate unilateral
16 threat warnings. These are termed Defense Terrorism Warning Reports. Warnings
17 within the DOD system generally stay within the system and are primarily for use by the
18 DOD Components. DOD Terrorism Warning Reports are active for a maximum 30-day
19 period with one 30-day extension authorized.

20
21 c. Basic Warning Report Procedures within the Department of Defense

22
23 (1) DIWS Terrorist Threat Warning Reports may be prepared and
24 issued by any member of the DIWS system. DIA is required to propose a National
25 Intelligence Community Alert or Advisory prior to issuing a unilateral DIWS Terrorism
26 Warning Report.

27
28 (2) Individual DOD components also have the right to independently
29 notify their members of impending threats. If a DOD component intelligence activity
30 receives information that leads to an assessment of an imminent terrorist attack, it may
31 exercise its right to issue a unilateral warning to its units, installations, or personnel
32 identified as targets for the attack. If the DOD component intelligence activity issues a
33 unilateral warning, it must label threat information disseminated as a unilateral judgment,
34 and must inform DIA of its action.

35
36 (3) Warnings are issued when specificity of targeting and timing exist
37 or when analysts have determined that sufficient information indicates that US personnel,
38 facilities, or interests, particularly those of the Department of Defense, are being targeted
39 for attack. Warnings need not be country-specific. A warning may cover an entire
40 region or the world. The key to a warning is recognition that the pre-incident indicators
41 for an attack are present.

42
43 (4) DIWS Terrorism Warning Reports are specific products. When
44 issued, they perform a number of functions. They are unambiguous - it is clear to the
45 recipients they are being warned. Warnings are intended for distribution up, down, and
46 laterally through the chain of command - not just downward. Warnings of impending

1 terrorist activity are likely to have national implications and shall be provided routinely to
2 decision-makers at the policy level of the US Government.

3
4 d. No “Double Standard”. Following the terrorist bombing of Pan Am flight
5 103 over Lockerbie, Scotland, on December 21, 1988, the US Government adopted a
6 policy of “No Double Standard” (see Public Law 101-604, *Aviation Security*
7 *Improvement Act of 1990*). No terrorist threat warning shall be issued solely to US
8 Government consumers IF the general public is included in, or can be construed to be
9 part of, terrorist targeting. Terrorist threat warnings may be issued exclusively within
10 government channels only when the threat is only to government targets. The DOS,
11 overseas, is the sole approving authority for releasing terrorist threat information to the
12 public

13 14 **7. Installation Level AT Threat Assessment Requirements and Activities**

15
16 a. Commanders down to the installation or tenant level task the appropriate
17 organizations under their command to gather, analyze, and disseminate terrorism threat
18 information. When organic intelligence/counterintelligence/law enforcement assets are
19 not available, commanders should request support from higher authority. The full range
20 of intelligence, counterintelligence, and law enforcement capabilities shall be utilized in
21 support of distinct and separate threat assessment requirements: annual threat
22 assessments and ongoing assessment of the local threat.

23
24 b. Annual Threat Assessment. Installation commanders shall, at least annually,
25 prepare a terrorism threat assessment for those personnel and assets for which they have
26 AT responsibilities. Whereas DOD Threat Methodology focuses on the degree of
27 activity of known terrorist groups, the annual threat assessment seeks to identify the full
28 range of feasible terrorist capabilities (weapons, tactics, techniques, and methods of
29 attack) that could reasonably be used against the installation or its personnel. Even in the
30 absence of a current known threat group, an assessment is a necessary input to the
31 required annual VA and for planning physical and procedural countermeasures. Annual
32 threat assessments should include all likely or feasible WMD including CBRNE threats.

33
34 c. Threat Matrix. Preparation of the annual threat assessment requires careful
35 analysis of known local threats, together with estimates of relevant national and
36 transnational threat capabilities. Locally derived, open-source information regarding the
37 availability of weapons and component materials in the area is also necessary in
38 developing the range of threats. Threat analysts preparing the assessment should
39 differentiate threats likely to be used inside the perimeter from those more likely to be
40 used outside the perimeter to aid in the VA and development of countermeasures. The
41 threat matrix unambiguously establishes the range of specific threat capabilities that shall
42 be used to analyze vulnerabilities and plan countermeasures. The threat matrix is a
43 planning tool which ensures that security and procedural countermeasures are
44 economically designed to counter specific threats or mitigate specific vulnerabilities, and
45 that the risk remaining is well understood by commanders making risk acceptance
46 decisions.

1
2 d. Both installation and unit commanders shall assess the terrorist threat for
3 probability and severity of occurrence. Probability is the estimate of the likelihood that a
4 threat shall cause an impact on the mission or a hazard to the installation. Severity is an
5 estimate of the threat in terms of the degree of injury, property damage, or other mission-
6 impairing factors. By combining estimates of severity and probability, an assessment of
7 risk can be made for each threat. A matrix may be used to assist in identifying the level
8 of risk. The outcome of this process is a prioritized list of threats. The highest priority
9 threat is the one that poses the most serious risk in terms of likelihood and severity. This
10 list of prioritized threats shall be used to evaluate the acceptability of certain risks and
11 which risks for which to make decisions concerning the employment of resources and
12 other actions that reduce vulnerability. This assessment should be recorded as a
13 record/baseline and updated regularly as the threat changes. If installation and unit
14 commanders do not have the resources to assess the threat for probability and severity of
15 occurrence, they should coordinate with their next higher echelon to assist with this
16 requirement.

17
18 e. Unit commanders should also conduct a variation of the AT Annual
19 Assessment, but apply it to the conduct of their unit mission. Threats should be listed
20 that affect the unit as it conducts its mission. The output of this assessment is a list of
21 terrorist threat capabilities associated with each phase of the operation.

22
23 f. In addition to preparing an annual threat assessment, commanders must also
24 continuously assess local threat information so appropriate FPCONs can be set.
25 Commanders at all levels shall forward up and down the chain of command all
26 information pertaining to suspected terrorist threats, or acts of terrorism involving DOD
27 personnel or assets for which they have AT responsibility. Threat information shall be
28 used in the determination to raise or lower the present Force Protection Condition.
29 Continuous threat analysis also supports the warning of suspected target facilities or
30 personnel through the installation's mass notification system when the information relates
31 threats of an immediate nature.

32
33
34
35
36
37

Appendix A

1
2
3
4
5
6
7
8
9
10
11
12
13
14
15
16
17
18
19
20
21
22

Intentionally Blank

1
2
3
4
5
6
7
8
9
10
11
12
13
14
15
16
17
18

APPENDIX B VULNERABILITY ASSESSMENT

1. General

6 A VA is the process the commander uses to determine the susceptibility of
7 assets to attack from threats identified by the AT threat assessment. The VA answers the
8 question “what kind of attack is the asset most/least vulnerable to?” DODD 2000.16,
9 *DoOD Antiterrorism Standards*, provides authoritative standards regarding both
10 installation and deploying unit Vulnerability Assessments. Vulnerabilities exist at every
11 installation as a result of the terrorist threat faced. Vulnerabilities are always there, no
12 matter the policies, procedures, structures and protective equipment. Although terrorist
13 threats cannot be controlled, they can be assessed and the vulnerability of assets to those
14 threats can be mitigated. Identifying and understanding vulnerabilities is important in
15 determining how well an asset shall be protected from loss. Vulnerabilities are also the
16 component of overall risk over which the commander has the most control and greatest
17 influence. By reducing vulnerability, the potential risk to an asset is also reduced.

19 2. Assessing Vulnerability

21 a. Installation or unit AT officers conduct a VA using key AT Working Group
22 members in a collaborative effort as the assessment team. Teams should include
23 representation from operations, security, intelligence, counterintelligence, law
24 enforcement, communications, fire department, engineers, medical services, housing,
25 emergency planning, and WMD planning and response. The VA must comply with
26 DODD 2000.16.

27
28 b. The end-state of the VA process is the identification of physical
29 characteristics or procedures that render critical assets, areas, or special events vulnerable
30 to a range of known or feasible terrorist capabilities. Determination of vulnerability is
31 partly a function of the commander’s desired level of protection for the asset, area, or
32 special event. Although performing a detailed VA is not simple, the results quantifying
33 and rating the effectiveness of an installation’s current protective measures are invaluable
34 and provide a major tool for developing AT countermeasures. The VA methodology
35 should follow the below sequence:

- 36
37 (1) List assets and the threats against those assets.
38
39 (2) Determine criteria to be used to assess assets against.
40
41 (3) Train assessment team on assessment intent and methodology.
42
43 (4) Assessment Team conducts assessment.
44
45 (5) Consolidate and review assessment results.
46

1 c. The Department of Defense has created several tools to assist conducting
2 Vulnerability Assessments to include the Joint Staff Core Vulnerability Assessment
3 Management Program (CVAMP); Mission, Symbolism, History, Accessibility,
4 Recognizability, Population, and Proximity (MSHARPP); and Criticality, Accessibility,
5 Recuperability, Vulnerability, Effect, and Recognizability (CARVER). The Defense
6 Threat Reduction Agency (DTRA) AT VA Team Guidelines are another excellent tool
7 available for Local (Base) Vulnerability Assessments. This is a comprehensive checklist
8 that is directly linked to DODD 2000.16 AT Standards and produces a product similar to
9 a Joint Staff Integrated VA (JSIVA).

11 3. Suggested VA Methodologies

12
13 a. Facility Commanders are encouraged to use a risk assessment tool that is
14 simple yet has some quantifiable logic to help in decision making. Assessment teams
15 shall use the methodology to determine terrorist options against specific targets and use
16 them as examples of protection strategies discussed in this appendix. The suggested tools
17 offered below have their strengths and their weaknesses - as with all tools, there is a right
18 tool for the job at hand. As an example, CARVER is not specifically tailored for AT
19 assessments, although it can be used. Likewise, MSHARPP is a targeting analysis tool
20 geared more closely to assessing personnel vulnerabilities. Assessment team members
21 should be cognizant of potential gaps when choosing one methodology over another. The
22 use of the Joint Staff CVAMP shall assist commanders and ATOs in managing their
23 command's vulnerabilities and associated funding requirements.

25 b. MSHARPP.

26
27 (1) The purpose of the MSHARPP matrix is to analyze likely terrorist
28 targets. Consideration is given to the local threat, likely means of attack available to the
29 enemy, and variables affecting the disposition (e.g., "attractiveness" to enemy, potential
30 psychological effect on community, etc.) of potential targets. This section provides an
31 example of how to use MSHARPP.

32
33 (2) After developing a list of potential targets, use the MSHARPP
34 selection factors to assist in further refining your assessment by associating a
35 weapon/tactic to a potential target to determine the efficiency, effectiveness and
36 plausibility of the method of attack and to identify vulnerabilities related to the target.
37 After the MSHARPP values for each target or component are assigned, the sum of the
38 values indicates the highest value target (for a particular mode of attack) within the limits
39 of the enemy's known capabilities.

40
41 (3) Mission. Mission focuses mainly on the threat to the situations,
42 activities, capabilities, and resources on an installation that are vulnerable to a terrorist
43 attack. The mission components consist of the equipment, information, facilities, and/or
44 operations or activities that are necessary to accomplish the installation's mission.

45
46 (a) When assessing points in this area, determine whether or

1 not an attack on mission components shall cause degradation by assessing the
2 Component's:

3
4 1. Importance. Importance measures the value of the
5 area or assets
6 located in the area, considering their function, inherent nature, and
7 monetary value.

8
9 2. Effect. Effect measures the ramifications of a terrorist
10 incident in the area, considering the psychological, economic, sociological, and military
11 impacts.

12
13 3. Recuperability. Recuperability measures the time
14 required for the function occurring at that area to be restored, considering the availability
15 of resources, parts, expertise and manpower, and redundancies.

16
17 (b) Mission Criteria Scale. Assess points to the target
18 equipment, information, facilities, and/or operations or activities (scale of 1-5; 5 being
19 worst) in this area based upon the degree of mission degradation if attacked by a terrorist.

20
21 1. ONE. Destroying or disrupting this asset would have
22 no effect on the ability of the installation to accomplish its mission.

23
24 2. TWO. The installation could continue to carry out its
25 mission if this asset were attacked, albeit with some degradation in effectiveness.

26
27 3. THREE. Half of the mission capability remains if the
28 asset were successfully attacked.

29
30 4. FOUR. Ability to carry out a primary mission of the
31 installation would be significantly impaired if this asset were successfully attacked.

32
33 5. FIVE. Installation cannot continue to carry out its
34 mission until the attacked asset is restored.

35
36 (4) Symbolism. Consider whether the target represents, or is perceived
37 by the enemy to represent, a symbol of a targeted group (e.g., symbolic of US military,
38 Christianity, government, authority, etc.). Assess points in this area based upon the
39 symbolic value of the target to the enemy. Symbolism criteria scale:

40
41 (a) High profile, direct symbol of target group or ideology,
42 asset is perceived to be vital to the mission of the installation.

43
44 (b) Low profile, direct symbol of target group or ideology.

45
46 (c) Low profile and/or obscure symbol of target group or

1 ideology.

2
3 (5) History. Do terrorist groups have a history of attacking this type of
4 target? While you must consider terrorist trends worldwide, focus on local targeting
5 history and capabilities. Symbolism criteria scale:

6
7 (a) Strong history of attacking this type of target.

8
9 (b) History of attacking this type of target, but none in the
10 immediate past.

11
12 (c) Little to no history of attacking this type of target.

13
14 (6) Accessibility. A target is accessible when an operational element
15 can reach the target with sufficient personnel and equipment to accomplish its mission.
16 A target can be accessible even if it requires the assistance of knowledgeable insiders.
17 This assessment entails identifying and studying critical paths that the operational
18 element must take to achieve its objectives, and measuring those things that aid or
19 impede access. The enemy must not only be able to reach the target but must also remain
20 there for an extended period.

21
22 (a) The four basic stages to consider, when assessing
23 accessibility are:

24
25 1. Infiltration from the staging base to the target area.

26
27 2. Movement from the point of entry to the target or
28 objective.

29
30 3. Movement to the target's critical element.

31
32 4. Exfiltration.

33
34 (b) Accessibility criteria scale.

35
36 1. Easily accessible, standoff weapons can be employed.

37
38 2. Inside Perimeter fence, climbing or lowering required.

39
40 3. Not accessible or inaccessible without extreme
41 difficulty.

42
43 (7) Recognizability. A target's recognizability is the degree to which it
44 can be recognized by an operational element and/or intelligence collection and
45 reconnaissance asset under varying conditions. Weather has an obvious and significant
46 impact on visibility (yours and the enemy's). Rain, snow, and ground fog may obscure

1 observation. Road segments with sparse vegetation and adjacent high ground provide
2 excellent conditions for good observation. Distance, light, and season must be
3 considered. Other factors that influence recognizability include the size and complexity
4 of the target, the existence of distinctive target signatures, the presence of masking or
5 camouflage, and the technical sophistication and training of the enemy. Recognizability
6 criteria scale:

7
8 (a) Target is clearly recognizable under all conditions and
9 from a distance; requires little or no training for recognition.

10
11 (b) Target is easily recognizable at small-arms range and
12 requires a small amount of training for recognition.

13
14 (c) Target is difficult to recognize at night or in bad weather,
15 or might be confused with other targets; requires training for recognition.

16
17 (d) Target cannot be recognized under any conditions—
18 except by experts.

19
20 (8) Population. Population addresses two factors: quantity of
21 personnel and their demography. Demography asks the question “who are the targets?”
22 Depending on the ideology of the terrorist group (s), being a member of a particular
23 demographic group can make someone (or some group) a more likely target.

24
25 (a) When assessing points in this area, determine whether or
26 not the group(s) have a history of, or are predicted to target:

27
28 1. Military personnel.

29
30 2. Family members (US citizens in general).

31
32 3. Civilian employees of the US Government (include
33 local nationals).

34
35 4. Senior officers or other high-risk personnel.

36
37 5. Member of an ethnicity (racial, religious, or regionally
38 defined).

39
40 (b) Quantity addresses the number of people that would
41 become victims if a particular target were attacked. Going on the assumption the intent
42 of the attack is to kill or injure personnel, it follows that the more densely populated an
43 area/facility is, the more lucrative a target it makes (all other things being equal).

44
45 (c) Population criteria scale.

46

Appendix B

1 1. Densely populated; prone to frequent crowds, facility
2 routinely contains substantial numbers of personnel known to be targeted by the enemy
3 and/or the population is comprised of personnel deemed vital to the accomplishment of
4 the installation's mission.

5
6 2. Relatively large numbers of people, but not in close
7 proximity (i.e., spread out and hard to reach in a single attack), contains known target
8 group, but rarely in large concentrations, population has no special segment necessary for
9 mission accomplishment.

10
11 3. Sparsely populated; prone to having small groups or
12 individuals, little target value based on demographics of occupants.

13
14 (9) Proximity. Is the potential target located near other personnel,
15 facilities, or resources that, because of their intrinsic value or "protected" status and a fear
16 of collateral damage, afford it some form of protection? (e.g., near national monuments,
17 protected/religious symbols, etc., that the enemy holds in high regard).

18
19 (a) It is important to consider whether the target is in close
20 proximity to other likely targets. Just as the risk of unwanted collateral damage may
21 decrease the chances of attack, a "target-rich" environment may increase the chances of
22 attack.

23
24 (b) Proximity criteria scale.

25
26 1. Target is isolated; no chance of unwanted collateral
27 damage to protected symbols or personnel.

28
29 2. Target is in close enough proximity to place protected
30 personnel, facilities, etc., at risk of injury or damage, but not destruction.

31
32 3. Target is in close proximity; serious injury/ damage or
33 death/total destruction of protected personnel/facilities likely.

34
35 (10) In an MSHARPP worksheet, values from 1 to 5 are assigned to
36 each factor based on the associated data for each target. Five represents the highest
37 vulnerability or likelihood of attack and 1 the lowest. Accordingly, the higher the total
38 score, the more vulnerable the target. Because this analysis is highly subjective, some
39 analysts prefer simple "stoplight" charts with red, yellow and green markers representing
40 descending degrees of vulnerability. The MSHARPP analysis must consider both the
41 present force protection posture and enhanced postures proposed for escalating FPCONs.
42 Specific target vulnerabilities must be combined with exploitable perimeter control
43 vulnerabilities. If access routes are well protected and not deemed exploitable an
44 otherwise vulnerable building becomes a less likely target.

45
46 c. CARVER.

1
2
3
4
5
6
7
8
9
10
11
12
13
14
15
16
17
18
19
20
21
22
23
24
25
26
27
28
29
30
31
32
33
34
35
36
37
38
39
40
41
42
43
44
45
46

(1) CARVER is a very useful tool for determining that your critical assets might indeed offer an enemy a good or soft target. If you employ the very same CARVER analysis to every asset, it shall yield a good estimate as to the attractiveness of those assets to an enemy. Specifically commanders shall then know which "targets" require hardening or otherwise increased protection.

(2) CARVER is an acronym, with each letter representing the following:

(a) Criticality. The importance of a system, subsystem, complex, or component. A target is critical when its destruction or damage has a significant impact on the output of the targeted system, subsystem, or complex, and at the highest level, on the unit's ability to make war or perform essential functions. Criticality depends on several factors:

1. How rapidly shall the impact of asset destruction affect the unit's essential functions.
2. What percentage of output and essential functions is curtailed by asset damage.
3. Is there an existence of substitutes for the output product or service.
4. What is the number of assets and their position in the system or complex flow diagram.
5. Criticality asks the question: How critical is the asset to your mission accomplishment?

(b) Accessibility. The ease that an asset can be reached, either physically or by standoff weapons. An asset is accessible when a terrorist element can physically infiltrate the asset, or the asset can be hit by direct or indirect fire. As a reminder, assets can be people, places, or things. The use of standoff weapons should always be considered when evaluating accessibility. Survivability of the attacker is usually most related to a target's accessibility. Accessibility asks the question: How easily can an enemy get access to, or have their weapons reach the asset?

(c) Recuperability. A measure of time required to replace, repair or bypass, the destruction or damage inflicted on the target. Recuperability varies with the sources and ages of targeted components and with the availability of spare parts. The existence of economic embargoes and the technical resources of the installation shall influence recuperability. Recuperability asks the question: How long would it take you to repair or replace the asset?

1 (d) Vulnerability. A measure of the ability of the terrorist to
2 damage the target using available assets (people and material). A target (asset) is
3 vulnerable if the terrorist has the means and expertise to successfully attack it.
4 Vulnerability depends on:

5
6 1. The nature of the construction of the target.

7
8 2. The assets available (manpower, transportation,
9 weapons, explosives, and equipment) to defend the asset.

10
11 3. Vulnerability asks the question: Is the asset literally
12 hardened or guarded? Are measures in place to mitigate any threat?

13
14 (e) Effect on the population. The positive or negative
15 influence on the population as a result of the action taken. Effect considers public
16 relation reaction in the vicinity of the target, but also considers the domestic and
17 international reaction as well. Shall reprisals against friendlies result? Shall national
18 PSYOP themes be contradicted or reinforced? Shall exfiltration and evasion be helped or
19 hurt? Shall the enemy population be alienated from its government, or shall it become
20 supportive of the government. Effect is often neutral at the tactical level. Effect asks the
21 question: What is the effect on the local population, be it terror or demoralization, and
22 associated mission degradation?

23
24 (f) Recognizability. The degree that a target can be
25 recognized under varying weather, light, and seasonal conditions without confusion with
26 other targets or components.

27
28 1. Factors that influence recognizability include the size
29 and complexity of the target, the existence of distinctive target signatures, and the
30 technical sophistication and training of the terrorists.

31
32 2. Recognizability asks the question: Can the enemy
33 recognize the target for what it truly is and its importance?

34
35 (3) Target selection requires detailed intelligence and thorough
36 planning, and is based on the CARVER factors identified above. The CARVER Matrix
37 is a decision tool for rating the relative desirability of potential targets and for wisely
38 allocating attack resources. Two rules of thumb apply for completing the matrix:

39
40 (a) For strategic level analysis, list systems and subsystems.

41
42 (b) For tactical level analysis list complexes or components of
43 subsystems and complexes. Keep in mind that the scale can be adjusted, such as one to
44 ten or 10 to 100, provided that consistency is observed.

45
46 (4) After completing the matrix for all assets, total the scores and then

1 rank order those totals to prioritize vulnerabilities.

2

3 (5) The following are basic mitigation tips to address four of the six
4 CARVER Components:

5

6 (a) Reduce criticality. As practicable have a back-up device,
7 system or tested plan to afford mission accomplishment without the asset; create
8 redundancy either physically or operationally; have a tested and viable Continuity Of
9 Operations Plan; and have a fall-back site for conducting the same mission from another
10 location.

11

12 (b) Reduce accessibility. Reduce access both, physical and
13 cyber, as applicable; use barriers, other barricades, carefully controlled pedestrian and
14 vehicle movement and/or access and parking; and use fences, remote motion sensors, and
15 remote video surveillance.

16

17 (c) Reduce vulnerability. Harden the structure and/or
18 immediate environment to include window treatment to prevent glass shards, structural
19 reinforcement, and shatterproof and fireproof building materials. Move vehicle parking
20 and access sufficiently away from personnel massing facilities.

21

22 (d) Reduce recognizability. Delete location and purpose of
23 facility from all base maps and remove building signs that describe function or give title
24 of unit in facility. Instruct telephone operators to not give out number or existence of
25 facility. Use plant cover, including trees and bushes, to partially conceal facility,
26 particularly from roads.

27

28 d. Core Vulnerability Assessment Management Program.

29

30 (1) CVAMP is an automated and web-based means of managing a
31 command's vulnerabilities and associated funding requirements. CVAMP key
32 capabilities include:

33

34 (a) Provide a means to database enter vulnerability
35 assessment findings into a database in accordance with DODD 2000.16, for both higher
36 headquarters and local assessments.

37

38 (b) Provide capability of receiving observations directly from
39 the JSIVA Information System.

40

41 (c) Document a commander's risk assessment decision for
42 each vulnerability.

43

44 (d) Track the status of known vulnerabilities until mitigated.

45

46 (e) Provide a tool to assist in prioritizing vulnerabilities via a

1 weighted scale based on user input.

2
3 (f) Provide commanders a vehicle to identify requirements to
4 the responsible chain of command.

5
6 (g) Provide the ability to roll vulnerability data into a resource
7 requirement. This includes unfunded requirement (UFR) submissions as well as
8 emergent and emergency CbT RIF requests. Use of CVAMP is mandatory for
9 submission to the Joint Staff of CbT RIF requests.

10
11 (h) Provide ability to control release of vulnerabilities and
12 associated funding requests through the chain of command – access is limited to a “need
13 to know” basis as determined by system administrators at each command level.

14
15 (i) Allow for prioritization of emergent CbT RIF requests and
16 UFRs as well as provide a tool to assist in this process based on user input.

17
18 (j) Provide a ready reference to track the status of installations
19 and activities by FPCON and/or Terrorism Threat Level.

20
21 (2) Registration for CVAMP is embedded within the Joint Staff’s
22 Antiterrorism Enterprise Portal via the SIPRNET. Once registered on ATEP, system
23 administrators identified at each level of command shall assign CVAMP roles and
24 functions to users based on their needs/requirements. To allow for flexibility,
25 administrators can assign multiple roles to a user. Each role sets specific user
26 permissions within the system. Besides SIPRNET access, minimal additional equipment
27 or training is required to use CVAMP. The system operates in a user-friendly format
28 with drop down menus and no complex computer skills are required to create, review,
29 modify or manage the program. Initial CVAMP-related roles and their permissions are:

30
31 (a) Commander. Capability to read and/or write with
32 comment and retains sole release authority to higher headquarters on all vulnerability
33 assessments, vulnerabilities, and funding requests.

34
35 (b) ATO. Capability to create vulnerability assessments,
36 vulnerabilities and funding requests.

37
38 (c) Resource Manager. Capability to read and/or write to all
39 funding requests.

40
41 (d) Assessor. Capability to create observations associated
42 with a vulnerability assessment.

43
44 (e) System Administrator. Capability to assign and manage
45 roles within immediate organization and one level down.

- 1 (f) Users should contact their local/and or next higher
- 2 headquarters CVAMP administrators to establish their roles within CVAMP.
- 3
- 4

Appendix B

- 1
- 2
- 3
- 4
- 5
- 6
- 7
- 8
- 9
- 10
- 11
- 12
- 13
- 14
- 15
- 16
- 17
- 18
- 19
- 20
- 21
- 22
- 23
- 24

Intentionally Blank

1
2
3
4
5
6
7
8
9
10
11
12
13
14
15
16
17
18
19
20
21
22
23
24
25
26
27
28
29
30
31
32
33
34
35
36
37
38
39
40
41
42
43
44
45

APPENDIX C CRITICALITY ASSESSMENT

1. General

This appendix describes the methodology commanders and civilian equivalents can use to complete a Criticality Assessment. A critical asset is a specific entity that is of such extraordinary importance that its incapacitation or destruction would have a very serious, debilitating effect on the ability of a nation to continue to function effectively. ~~any facility, equipment, service or resource considered essential to DOD operations in peace, crisis, and war and warranting measures and precautions to ensure their continued efficient operation; protection from disruption, degradation or destruction; and timely restoration.~~ Both regulations and the commander's priorities and intent determine critical assets. Regulations cover items such as VIPs, ammunition storage areas, etc. The Commander's intent extends coverage to other items such as mission critical and high occupancy assets. Critical assets can be people, property, equipment, activities and operations, information, facilities, and materials.

2. Conducting the Criticality Assessment.

a. The Criticality Assessment identifies assets supporting DOD missions, units, or activities and deemed critical by military commanders or civilian agency managers. For AT purposes, the Criticality Assessment should include high-population facilities, which may not necessarily be mission essential (recreational activities, theaters, or sports venues). It addresses the impact of temporary or permanent loss of assets. It examines costs of recovery and reconstitution including time, dollars, capability and infrastructure support.

b. In military units deployed under the command of the Services or a combatant command, the staff at each command echelon determines and prioritizes critical assets. The commander responsible for AT approves the prioritized list.

The Criticality Assessment goals are:

- (a) Identify installation's/unit's key assets.
- (b) Determine whether critical functions can be duplicated under various attack scenarios.
- (c) Determine time required to duplicate key assets or infrastructures efforts if temporarily or permanently lost.
- (d) Determine priority of response to key assets, functions, and infrastructures in the event of fire, multiple bombings, or other terrorist acts.

1 c. The assessment process described below is specifically designed for AT
2 Assessment and Planning. Other DOD processes, such as the “Mission Essential
3 Vulnerable Area” (MEVA), the “Mission, Symbolism, History, Accessibility,
4 Recognizability, Population, and Proximity” (MSHARPP) methodology, and the
5 ~~“Criticality, Accessibility, Recuperability, Vulnerability, Effect, and Recognizability”~~
6 ~~(CARVER)~~ matrix tool, offer similar types of subjective assessments but are not
7 specifically tailored for antiterrorism assessments. While the MSHARPP and CARVER
8 processes are optional methodologies for those who are familiar with their use, both have
9 design limitations and are best used only as an adjunct to the risk assessment
10 (combination of the criticality, threat, and vulnerability assessment ratings) and
11 management methodology.

12
13 d. The purpose of the Criticality Assessment process is to identify and prioritize
14 all assets on an installation. ~~Assets include personnel, equipment, stockpiles, buildings,~~
15 ~~recreation areas, or transportation systems that are deemed critical as defined by DoD~~
16 ~~Antiterrorism Force Protection Installation Planning Template. Assets include~~
17 ~~personnel, equipment, stockpiles, buildings, or transportation systems that are deemed~~
18 ~~critical as defined by DODD 3020.~~ There are many different types of assets critical to
19 mission accomplishment and it is important not to exclude some assets because they are
20 not necessarily mission-essential or physically located on the installation. For example, a
21 telephone switching facility located off base may be essential to communications if
22 alternative systems are not identified. There may also be assets on the installation which
23 are not critical to the direct operation of the installation, but are critical to the Department
24 of Defense.

25
26 e. It may also be useful to link identified threat attack means to a specific time
27 period or location. For example, a terrorist group operating in the proximity of the
28 installation may typically target areas, such as schools or the commissary and/or
29 exchange that contain a large number of people at certain times.

30
31 f. When determining asset criticality, use of the following criteria shall assist in
32 standardizing the process.

33
34 (1) Importance. Measures the value of the area or assets located in the
35 area, considering their function, inherent nature, and monetary value.

36
37 (2) Effect. Measures the ramification of a terrorist incident in the area,
38 considering the psychological, economic, sociological, and military impacts.

39
40 (3) Recoverability. Measures the time required for the function
41 occurring at that area to be restored, considering the availability of resources, parts,
42 expertise and manpower, and redundancies. Even if a DOD asset is injured, damaged, or
43 destroyed, it may have future value in the accomplishment of other DOD missions or be
44 of great symbolic value to the Department of Defense, the US Government, and the
45 American people. Consideration should therefore be given to the resources that must be

1 expended to recover an asset and in some cases, repair it for return to service with the
2 Department of Defense in the future.

3
4 (4) Mission Functionality. Measures key positions, special facilities,
5 specialized equipment, etc., used to fulfill assigned missions.

6
7 (5) Substitutability. Are there substitutes available for personnel,
8 facilities or materiel? Can assigned missions be performed using substitutes? If the
9 substitutes are less capable, can the mission still be accomplished successfully?

10
11 (6) Reparability. If a DOD asset is injured or damaged, can it be
12 repaired and rendered operable? How much time is required? How much would it cost?
13 Could repairs be accomplished in a timely manner? Would repairs degrade asset
14 performance, and if so, can the mission be accomplished in the degraded condition?

15
16 **3. Criticality Assessment Matrix.**

17
18 a. The purpose of a Criticality Assessment Matrix is to determine the criticality
19 of each asset, which shall also help to prioritize them. For each asset, the Assessment
20 Team shall assign values for each criteria based on a scale, such as one to ten. The
21 Assessment Team must determine what criteria to use.

22
23 b. Once all asset values are tallied, they can be rank-ordered such that highest
24 score is "most critical" and lowest score is "least critical." However, it is important to
25 emphasize that not all assets in the matrix shall be "essential for mission
26 accomplishment".

27
28
29

Appendix C

1
2
3
4
5
6
7
8
9
10
11
12
13
14
15
16
17
18
19
20
21
22
23

Intentionally Blank

1
2
3
4
5
6
7
8
9
10
11
12
13
14
15
16
17
18
19
20
21
22
23
24
25
26
27

APPENDIX D
SAMPLE ANTITERRORISM PLAN FORMAT

1. Overview

a. The format outlined below is offered as one means of developing an AT plan. It is optimized for a base or installation, but can be adapted for other facilities and deployed units. It is meant to help the AT officer structure the AT plan in a comprehensive and organized manner. The format is patterned after the standard five-paragraph military operations order (Situation-Mission-Execution-Administration and Logistics-Command and Signal).

b. This format enables the synchronization of existing programs such as Law Enforcement, Physical Security, AT, OPSEC, INFOSEC, High-Risk Personnel protection, and other installation efforts. AT Plans should be integrated into all plans and separate annexes. Remember that staff interaction is a crucial element of developing a realistic, executable plan.

c. Although this sample is patterned after the military operations order, it ~~is~~ applicable applies to managers of ~~OSD- Defense~~ Agencies and DOD field activities as they develop plans to protect personnel, activities, and material under their control.

d. This sample uses supporting Annexes, Appendices, Tabs, and Enclosures to provide amplifying instructions as required. This method shortens the length of the basic plan (which should be read by all personnel outlined in the plan), and provides organization, structure, and scalability.

Appendix D

1
2
3
4
5 INSTALLATION/OPERATION NAME ANTITERRORISM PLAN 2002 (AT-04)
6
7 Task Organization. [Include all agencies/personnel (base and civilian) responsible to implement the plan.
8 Include as a separate Annex. See Annex A (Task Organization).]
9
10 Maps/Charts: [List all applicable maps or charts. Include enough data to ensure personnel are using the
11 correct year/edition/version of the subject material.]
12
13 Time Zone: [Enter the time zone of the installation. Indicate the number of hours to calculate (plus/minus)
14 ZULU time.]
15
16 Ref: [Enter the compilation of pertinent publications, references, MOU/MOA/MAA. This list may be
17 included in a separate Annex. See Annex Q (References).]
18
19 I. SITUATION
20
21 a. General. [This plan applies to all personnel assigned or attached to the installation. [Describe
22 the political/military environment in sufficient detail for subordinate commanders, staffs, and units to
23 understand their role in the installation AT operations.]
24
25 b. Enemy. [The enemy is any adversary capable of threatening the installation's personnel,
26 facilities, and equipment. ~~[ENTER-t]~~The general threat of terrorism to this installation including the
27 intentions and capabilities, identification, composition, disposition, location, and estimated strengths of
28 hostile forces. Include the general threat of terrorist use of WMD against this installation. This information
29 should remain unclassified when possible. See paragraph 1f, Intelligence, on identifying specific threats.]
30 ~~.)~~ This information may be included as a separate Annex. See Annex B (Intelligence).]
31
32 c. Friendly. ~~[ENTER-t]~~The forces available (both military and civilian) to respond to a terrorist
33 WMD attack. Include the next higher headquarters and adjacent installations, and any units/organizations
34 that are not under installation command, but may be required to respond to such an incident. These units /
35 organizations may include Host Nation (HN) and US military police forces, fire and emergency services,
36 medical, and federal/state and local agencies, special operations forces, engineers, detection (radiological,
37 nuclear, biological, and chemical) decontamination or smoke units, and explosive ordnance disposal
38 (EOD). Include MOAs/MOUs and any other special arrangements that will improve forces available to
39 support the plan. If in the U.S-US and its territories, the Department of Justice, Federal Bureau of
40 Investigation (FBI) is responsible for coordinating all Federal agencies and DOD forces assisting in the
41 resolution of a terrorist incident. If outside the U.S-US and its territories, the Department of State (DOS) is
42 the lead agency. This information can be included in a separate Annex(s). See Annex A (Task
43 Organization) and Annex J (Command Relationships).]
44
45 d. Attachments/Detachments. ~~[ENTER-i]~~Installation/civilian agencies NOT normally assigned to
46 the installation that are needed to support this plan. Explain interagency relationships and interoperability
47 issues. This can be listed in other Annexes. See Annex A (Task Organization) and Annex J (Command
48 Relationships).]
49
50 e. Assumptions. (List planning/execution assumptions) ~~[ENTER-a]~~All critical assumptions used
51 as a basis for this plan. Assumptions are those factors unlikely to change during the implementation of the
52 AT plan and that must addressed in order to continue to plan. They can range from the installation's troop
53 strength to addressing the local political/social environment. Examples follow:
54
55 (1) The installation is vulnerable to theft, pilferage, sabotage, and other threats. The
56 installation is also vulnerable to a WMD attack.

1
2
3
4
5
6
7
8
9
10
11
12
13
14
15
16
17
18
19
20
21
22
23
24
25
26
27
28
29
30
31
32
33
34
35
36
37
38
39
40
41
42
43
44
45
46
47
48
49
50
51
52
53
54
55
56

(2) An act of terrorism involving WMD can produce major consequences that will overwhelm almost immediately the capabilities of the installation.

(3) Security personnel, both military and civilian, may be insufficient to provide total protection of all installation resources; therefore, the principal owner or user of a facility, resource, or personnel must develop adequate unit awareness and safeguard measures.

(4) No single unit on the installation possesses the expertise to act unilaterally in response to WMD attacks.

(5) If protective equipment is not available, responders will not put their own lives at risk.

(6) Local, non-military, response forces will arrive within [time] of notification.

(7) Units specializing in WMD response will arrive on-site within [number of hours based on installation location] of notification.

(8) The HN is supportive of U.S.-US policies, and will fulfill surge requirements needed to respond to a WMD incident IAW MOAs/MOUs.]

f. Intelligence. [ENTER-t The person, staff, or unit responsible for intelligence collection and dissemination. The installation commander must have a system in place to access current intelligence. This can be included in Annex B (Intelligence).] [National-level agencies, Combatant Commanders, and intelligence systems provide theater or country threat levels and threat assessments. In the U.S.-US and its territories, local installations must obtain the local terrorist threat information by querying the FBI through the installation's law enforcement liaison, local law enforcement, or other federal agencies.] Obtain these assessments, as they will serve as a baseline for the installation's tailored assessment. The installation should have a process in place for developing the installation's tailored threat assessment or "local threat picture." The installation's tailored threat assessment should be continuously evaluated, updated, and disseminated, as appropriate, and as directed by the installation commander. The commander should determine the frequency and the means of dissemination of the installation's tailored AT product. Note: Commanders cannot change the threat level, which is developed at the national-level although they can declare higher Force Protection Conditions (FPCONs) than the baseline.

2. MISSION. [ENTER-a A clear, concise statement of the command's mission and the AT purpose or goal statement supporting the mission. The primary purpose of the AT plan is to safeguard personnel, property, and resources during normal operations. It is also designed to detect and deter a terrorist threat, enhance security and AT awareness, and to assign AT responsibilities for installation personnel.]

3. EXECUTION

a. Commander's Intent. (Commander's vision on how he/she sees the execution of the unit's AT program. Refer to Service planning doctrine for assistance.)

b. Concept of Operations. [ENTER-h How the overall AT operation should progress. This plan stresses deterrence of terrorist incidents through preventive and response measures common to all combatant commands and Services. During day-to-day operations, the installation should stress continuous AT planning and passive, defensive operations. This paragraph should provide subordinates sufficient guidance to act if contact or communications with the installation chain of command is lost or disrupted.]

(1) The installation's AT Concept of Operations should be phased in relation to pre-incident actions and post-incident actions. AT planning and execution requires that staff elements work with a much greater degree of cohesiveness and unity of mission than that required during the conduct of normal base sustainment operations. The AT mission, and the unpredictability of its execution, requires

Appendix D

1 very specific “how to” implementation instructions of DOD FPCON Measures and in what manner these
2 actions must be coordinated. This “how to” element is not normally included in the Concept of Operations
3 paragraph; however the necessity to provide “how to” guidance in the AT plan requires a different manner
4 of data presentation to ensure brevity and clarity. The implementation instructions are put into the form of
5 action sets and can be displayed in the form of an execution matrix (Pre-Incident Action Set Matrix).
6

7 (2) In Post-Incident planning, the installation should focus on its response and
8 reconstitution responsibilities upon notification of a terrorist incident and the procedures for obtaining
9 technical assistance/augmentation if the incident exceeds the installation’s organic capabilities. National-
10 level responders (Federal Emergency Management Agency (FEMA), Red Cross, and Federal Bureau of
11 Investigation (FBI)) may not be immediately accessible or available to respond to an installation’s needs.
12 Therefore each installation must plan for the worst-case scenario, by planning its response based on its
13 organic resources and available local support through MOA/MOUs.
14

15 (3) The situation may dictate that the installation not only conduct the initial response
16 but also sustained response operations. Many installations do not have onboard WMD officers or response
17 elements. This paragraph will include specific implementation instructions for all functional areas of
18 responsibility and the manner in which these actions must be coordinated. The implementation instructions
19 can be put in the form of actions sets and displayed in the form of a synchronization matrix (Post-Incident
20 Action Set Synchronization Matrix). The synchronization matrix format clearly describes relationships
21 between activities, units, supporting functions, and key events which must be carefully synchronized to
22 minimize loss of life and to contain the effects of a terrorist incident.
23

24 c. Tasks. [ENTER] The specific tasks for each subordinate unit or element listed in the Task
25 Organization paragraph. Key members of the installation have responsibilities that are AT and/or WMD
26 specific. The commander should ensure that a specific individual/unit/element within the installation is
27 responsible for each action identified in this plan. Each individual/unit/element must know the tasks and
28 responsibilities, what these responsibilities entail, and how these will be implemented. While the tasks and
29 responsibilities for each AT planning and response Element will be delineated in the Pre- and Post-incident
30 Action Set Matrices, it is recommended that the installation commander identify/designate the primary lead
31 for each element and enter that information in this paragraph.]
32

33 (1) First Subordinate Unit/Element/Tenant

34 (a) Task listing.

35 d. Coordinating Instructions. [This paragraph should include AT specific coordinating
36 instructions and subparagraphs, as the commander deems appropriate. In addition, this section of the AT
37 plan outlines aspects of the installation’s AT posture that require particular attention to guarantee the most
38 effective and efficient implementation of the AT plan. For the purposes of this plan, there are five basic
39 coordinating instructions: 1) AT planning and response elements; 2) Procedural; 3) Security Posture; 4)
40 Threat Specific Responsibilities; and 5) Special Installation Areas. The reader will be directed to specific
41 Annexes that will provide amplifying instructions on these topics. The sections listed below are
42 representative, and may not be all-inclusive.
43
44

45 (1) AT Planning and Response. For instructional purposes, this template outlines AT
46 planning and response elements on the installation required to respond to a terrorist/WMD incident. Initial
47 and sustained response to an attack must be a coordinated effort between the many AT planning and
48 response elements of the installation, based on the installation’s organic capabilities. As the situation
49 exceeds the installation’s capabilities, it must activate MOAs/MOUs with the local/State/ Federal agencies
50 (U.S.US and its territories) or HN (outside the U.S.US and its territories). For the purposes of this plan, an
51 installation’s capability is divided into AT planning and response elements. These tailored, installation-
52 level elements parallel the national-level FEMA ESFs and the JSIVA evaluation criteria to the greatest
53 degree possible.
54
55

56 AT Planning & Response Elements

- 1
- 2 Information & Planning *
- 3 Communications * +
- 4 HAZMAT *
- 5 Security * +
- 6 Explosive Ordnance Disposal (EOD) +
- 7 Firefighting * +
- 8 Health & Medical Services * +
- 9 Resource Support *
- 10 Mass Care *
- 11 Public Works *
- 12 Intelligence Process +
- 13 Installation AT Plans/Programs +
- 14 Installation Perimeter Access +
- 15 Security System technology +
- 16 Executive Protection +
- 17 Response & Recovery +
- 18 Mail Handling +
- 19
- 20 * Derived from FEMA ESFs
- 21 + Derived from JSIVA assessment criteria
- 22

(2) Procedural

- 23
- 24
- 25 (a) Alert Notification Procedures. See Appendix 14 to Annex C
- 26 (Operations).
- 27
- 28 (b) Use of Force/Rules of Engagement. See Annex H (Legal).
- 29
- 30 (c) Installation Training & Exercises. See Annex N (AT Program Review,
- 31 Training & Exercises).
- 32
- 33 (d) Incident Response. See Appendix 1 to Annex C (Operations).
- 34
- 35 (e) Consequence Management. See Appendix 1 to Annex C (Operations).
- 36
- 37 (f) High-Risk Personnel Protection Procedures. See Appendix 9 to Annex
- 38 C (Operations).
- 39
- 40 (g) AT Program Review (See Annex N (AT Program Review, Training &
- 41 Exercises).
- 42
- 43 (h) Higher Headquarters Vulnerability Assessments. See Annex N (AT
- 44 Program Review, Training & Exercises).
- 45

(3) Security Posture Responsibilities

- 46
- 47
- 48 (a) Law Enforcement. See Appendix 7 to Annex C (Operations).
- 49
- 50 (b) Physical Security to include Lighting, Barriers, Access Control. See
- 51 Appendix 6 to Annex C Operations).
- 52
- 53 (c) Other On-site Security Elements. See Appendix 8 to Annex C
- 54 (Operations).
- 55
- 56 (d) Operations Security. See Appendix 10 to Annex C (Operations).

1
2
3
4
5
6
7
8
9
10
11
12
13
14
15
16
17
18
19
20
21
22
23
24
25
26
27
28
29
30
31
32
33
34
35
36
37
38
39
40
41
42
43
44
45
46
47
48
49
50
51
52
53
54
55
56

- (e) Technology. See Appendix 15 to Annex C (Operations).
 - (f) EOC Operations. See Appendix 12 to Annex C (Operations)
 - (g) Critical Systems Continuity of Operations (optional). See Appendix 13 to Annex C (Operations).
 - (h) Other
- (4) Threat Specific Responsibilities
- (a) Antiterrorism. See Appendix 2 to Annex C (Operations).
 - (b) Weapons of Mass Destruction. See Appendix 5 to Annex C (Operations).
 - (c) Special Threat Situations. See Appendix 3 to Annex C (Operations).
 - (d) Information Security. See Appendix 11 to Annex C (Operations).
 - (e) Natural/Man-made Hazards (Optional). See Appendix 16 to Annex C (Operations).
 - (f) Other
- (5) Special Security Areas
- (a) Airfield Security. See Appendix 4 to Annex C (Operations).
 - (b) Port Security. See Appendix 4 to Annex C (Operations).
 - (c) Embarkation/Arrival Areas. See Appendix 4 to Annex C (Operations).
 - (d) Buildings. See Appendix 4 to Annex C (Operations).
 - (e) Other

4. ADMINISTRATION AND LOGISTICS. ~~[ENTER+]~~The administrative and logistics requirements to support the AT plan, which should include enough information to make clear the basic concept for planned logistics support. Ensure the staff conducts logistical planning for both pre- and post-incident measures addressing the following: locations of consolidated WMD defense equipment; expedient decontamination supplies; Individual Protective Equipment exchange points; special contamination control requirements; retrograde contamination monitoring sites; WMD equipment/supply controlled supply rates and pre-stockage points; and procedures for chemical defense equipment “push” packages. Specific logistics and administrative requirements will emerge throughout the planning process outlined in the Concept of Operations, specifically when developing the action sets. These requirements should be incorporated into this paragraph. Finally, include fiscal instructions on how to support AT operations.

- a. Administration. See Annex O (Personnel Services).
- b. Logistics. See Annexes D (Logistics) and E (Fiscal).

5. COMMAND AND SIGNAL. ~~[ENTER+]~~Instructions for command and operation of communications-electronics equipment. Identify the primary and alternate locations of the command post and emergency operations center. Enter the installation’s chain of command. Highlight any deviation from that chain of

1 command that must occur as a result of a WMD incident. The chain of command may change based on the
 2 deployment of a Joint Task Force or a ~~President or Secretary of Defense National Command Authority~~
 3 directed mission. Identify the location of any technical support elements that could be called upon in the
 4 event of a terrorist WMD incident and the means to contact each. Recommend the installation coordinate
 5 with higher headquarters to establish procedures to allow for parallel coordination to report a terrorist
 6 WMD incident. The installation must provide for prompt dissemination of notifications and alarm signals,
 7 and the timely/orderly transmission and receipt of messages between elements involved in and responding
 8 to the incident.]
 9
 10 a. Command. See Annex A (Task Organization) and Annex J (Command Relationships).
 11
 12 b. Signal. See Annex K (Communications).
 13
 14 c. Command Post Locations
 15
 16 (1) Primary: [ENTER location]
 17
 18 (2) Alternate: [ENTER Location]
 19
 20 d. Succession of Command
 21
 22 (1) First alternate: [ENTER POSITION/TITLE]
 23
 24 (2) Second alternate: [ENTER POSITION/TITLE]
 25
 26
 27 //SIGNATURE//
 28 Commanding General/Officer
 29 Signature Block
 30
 31 ANNEXES: (Should provide amplifying instructions on specific aspects of the plan. Each ANNEX can be
 32 subdivided into APPENDICES, TABS, and ENCLOSURES as required to provide amplifying instructions.
 33 Further, some of these supporting documents may be established in other unit operating orders/procedures,
 34 and referenced as required.)
 35
 36 ANNEX A - Task Organization [ENTER key AT organization composition i.e., AT Working Group, Crisis
 37 Management Team, Emergency Operations Center, First Response Elements, etc.]
 38 Appendix 1 – DIA Threat Assessment or Service Worldwide Threat Assessment (e.g., USAF ()
 39 Postulated Worldwide Nonnuclear Threat)
 40
 41 Appendix ~~1-2~~ – Table of Organization
 42
 43 Appendix ~~2-3~~ – Post Prioritization Chart
 44
 45 ANNEX B – Intelligence [ENTER the agency(s) responsible for intelligence and specific instructions. In
 46 the U.S.US and its territories, commanders must obtain the local terrorist threat information by querying
 47 the FBI through the installation’s law enforcement liaison, local law enforcement or other federal agencies]
 48
 49 Appendix 1 – Local Threat Assessment
 50
 51 Appendix 2 – Local WMD Assessment
 52
 53 Appendix 3 – Local Criticality/Vulnerability Assessment
 54
 55 Appendix 4 – Risk Assessment
 56

Appendix D

Appendix 5 – Pre-deployment AT Vulnerability Assessment

ANNEX C – Operations [This is the most IMPORTANT part of the plan]. Annex C and supporting Appendices will provide specific instructions for all the various AT operations. All other Annexes/Appendices support the implementation of Annex C.

Appendix 1 – Incident Planning and Response [ENTER how the various agencies (military/civilian) and resources will be integrated to respond to the operations outlined below. These instructions should be generic enough to apply across the operational spectrum. Specific instructions for each operation will be detailed in the appropriate Annex/Appendix/Enclosure.]

Tab A – Incident Command and Control Procedures

Tab B – Incident Response Procedures

Tab C – Consequence Management Procedures

Appendix 2 – Antiterrorism

Tab A - Mission Essential Vulnerable Assets (MEVA)

Tab B - Potential Terrorist Targets

Tab C – FPCON

Enclosure 1 - FPCON Action Sets [Who/What/When/Where/How]

Tab D - Random Antiterrorism Measures (RAM) Procedures

Appendix 3 - Special Threat Situations

Tab A - Bomb Threats

Enclosure 1 – Bomb Threat Mitigation

Enclosure 2 – Evacuation Procedures

Enclosure 3 – Search Procedures

Tab B - Hostage Barricaded Suspect

Tab C – Mail Handling Procedures

Appendix 4 – Special Security Areas

Tab A – Airfield Security

Tab B – Port Security

Tab C – Embarkation/Arrival Areas.

Tab D – Buildings

Appendix 5 – Weapons of Mass Destruction (CBRNE) & HAZMAT [ENTER the specific procedures planning, training, and response to WMD (CBRNE) incidents. Care should be taken to integrate existing plans for response to HAZMAT incidents to avoid duplication. Include “baseline” preparedness.]

Tab A - WMD Action Set Synchronization Matrix [Who/What/Where/When/How]

Tab B – CBRNE Emergency Responder Procedures

Appendix 6 – Physical Security

Tab A – Installation Barrier Plan [ENTER procedures and pictorial representation of barrier plan.]

Tab B – Installation Curtailment Plan

Tab C – Construction Considerations

Tab D – Facility and Site Evaluation and/or Selection

Tab E – AT Guidance for Off-Installation Housing

Appendix 7 – Law Enforcement

1
2 Tab A – Organization, training, equipping of augmentation security forces
3 Tab B – Alternate Dispatch Location
4 Tab C – Alternate Arming Point
5
6 Appendix 8 – Other On-Site Security Forces
7
8 Appendix 9 – High Risk Personnel
9
10 Tab A – List of High Risk Billets
11
12 Appendix 10 – Operations Security
13
14 Appendix 11 – Information Security
15
16 Appendix 12 – Emergency Operations Center (EOC) Operations [ENTER procedure for the activation
17 & operations of the EOC.]
18
19 Tab A – EOC Staffing (Partial/Full)
20 Tab B – EOC Layout
21 Tab C – EOC Messages & Message Flow
22 Tab D – EOC Briefing Procedures
23 Tab E – EOC Situation Boards
24 Tab F – EOC Security and Access Procedures
25
26 Appendix 13 – Critical Systems Continuity of Operations Plans (Optional) [ENTER those systems
27 that are essential to mission execution and infrastructure support of the installation i.e., utilities systems,
28 computer networks, etc. This document outlines how the installation will continue to operate if one or more
29 critical systems are disrupted or fails and how the systems will be restored.]
30
31 Tab A – List of installation critical systems
32 Tab B – Execution checklist for each critical system
33
34 Appendix 14 - Emergency Mass Notification Procedures [ENTER the specific means and procedures
35 for conducting a mass notification. Also covered should be the procedures/means for contacting key
36 personnel and agencies.
37
38 Tab A – Situation Based Notification
39 Tab B – Matrix List of Phone Numbers/Email Accounts
40
41 Appendix 15 – Exploit Technology Advances [ENTER the process and procedures for developing and
42 employing new technology. Identify who is responsible and what should be accomplished.]
43
44 Appendix 16 – Higher Headquarters Vulnerability Assessments [ENTER procedures for conducting
45 higher headquarters vulnerability assessments.
46
47 Appendix 17 – Natural/Man-made Hazards (Optional) [Hurricanes, Flooding, Chemical Plants etc.]
48
49 Tab A - Locality specific natural and man-made hazards)
50
51 ANNEX D – Logistics (Specific logistics instructions on how to support AT operations)
52
53 Appendix 1 – Priority of Work [ENTER the priority of employing scarce logistical resource.]
54
55 Appendix 2 – Emergency Supply Services
56

Appendix D

| | |
|----|--|
| 1 | Appendix 3 – Weapons and Ammunition Supply Services |
| 2 | |
| 3 | Appendix 4 – Emergency Equipment Services |
| 4 | |
| 5 | Appendix 5 – Evacuation Shelters |
| 6 | |
| 7 | Appendix 6 – Generator Refueling Matrix |
| 8 | |
| 9 | ANNEX E – Fiscal (Specific fiscal instructions on how to support AT operations from pre-incident through |
| 10 | post-incident) |
| 11 | |
| 12 | Appendix 1 – AT Program of Memorandum Budget Submission Instruction |
| 13 | |
| 14 | Appendix 2 – Combating Terrorism Readiness Initiative Fund (CbT RIF) Submission Instructions |
| 15 | |
| 16 | Appendix 3 – Fiscal Management during Exigent Operations |
| 17 | |
| 18 | ANNEX F – Tenant Commanders (Specific instructions on how tenant commands/agencies support AT |
| 19 | operations) |
| 20 | |
| 21 | Appendix 1 – Areas of Responsibility (Pictorial) |
| 22 | |
| 23 | ANNEX G – Air Operations (Specific air instructions on how to support AT operations) |
| 24 | |
| 25 | Appendix 1 – List of Landing Zones (Used for emergency medical evacuations or |
| 26 | equipment/personnel staging areas.) |
| 27 | |
| 28 | Appendix 2 – LZ Preparation Procedures |
| 29 | |
| 30 | ANNEX H – Legal [ENTER the jurisdictional limits of the installation’s commander and key staff. |
| 31 | Although the Department of Justice, Federal Bureau of Investigation (FBI), has primary law enforcement |
| 32 | responsibility for terrorist incidents in the United States, the installation commander is responsible for |
| 33 | maintaining law and order on the installation. For outside the continental United States (OCONUS) |
| 34 | incidents, the installation commander must notify the HN and the geographic combatant commander; the |
| 35 | geographic combatant commander will notify the Department of State (DOS). Once a task force or other |
| 36 | than installation support arrives on the installation, the agencies fall under the direct supervision of the local |
| 37 | Incident Commander. In all cases, command of military elements remains within military channels. The |
| 38 | installation should establish HN agreements to address the use of installation security forces, other military |
| 39 | forces, and host-nation resources that clearly delineate jurisdictional limits. The agreements will likely |
| 40 | evolve into the installation having responsibility “inside the wire or installation perimeter” and the HN |
| 41 | having responsibility “outside the wire or installation perimeter”. There may be exceptions due to the wide |
| 42 | dispersal of work and housing areas, utilities, and other installation support mechanisms that may require |
| 43 | the installation to be responsible for certain areas outside of the installation perimeter.] |
| 44 | |
| 45 | Appendix 1 – Jurisdictional Issues |
| 46 | |
| 47 | Appendix 2 – Use of Force and/or Rules of Engagement Instructions |
| 48 | |
| 49 | Appendix 3 – Pictorial Representation of Installation Jurisdiction |
| 50 | |
| 51 | ANNEX I – Public Affairs (Specific PAO instructions on how to support AT operations) |
| 52 | |
| 53 | Appendix 1 – Command Information Bureau Organization & Operation |
| 54 | |
| 55 | Appendix 2 – Local/Regional Media Contact Information |
| 56 | |

1 Annex J – Command Relationships (Provides specific guidance on command relationships and
2 military/civilian interoperability issues during incident command and control).
3
4 Appendix 1 – AT Organizational Charts [Crisis Management Team, AT Working Group, First
5 Responder Elements, Incident Command Organization (include civilian and other external agencies).]
6
7 ANNEX K – Communications (Specific communications instructions on how to support AT operations.
8 Include systems/procedures for SECURE and NON-SECURE communications means.)
9
10 Appendix 1 – Installation AT Communication Architecture
11
12 Appendix 2 – Incident Command Communication Architecture
13
14 Appendix 3 – EOC Communication Architecture
15
16 Appendix 4 – Security Force Communication Architecture
17
18 Appendix 5 – Fire Department Communication Architecture
19
20 Appendix 6 – Medical Communication Architecture
21
22 Appendix 7 – Other Agencies
23
24 ANNEX L - Health Services (Specific medical instructions on how to support AT operations)
25
26 Appendix 1 - Mass Casualty Plan
27
28 Appendix 2 - Procedures for Operating with Civilian Emergency Medical Service and Hospitals
29
30 ANNEX M – Safety (Specific safety instructions on how to support AT operations)
31
32 ANNEX N – AT Program Review, Training, & Exercises
33
34 Appendix 1 – AT Program Review
35
36 Tab A – Local Assessments
37 Tab B – Higher Headquarters Assessments
38
39 Appendix 2 – AT Required Training
40
41 Appendix 3 – Exercises
42
43 ANNEX O – Personnel Services [ENTER administrative and personnel procedures required to support the
44 plan i.e., civilian overtime, post-traumatic stress syndrome counseling.]
45
46 Appendix 1 – Operating Emergency Evacuation Shelters
47
48 ANNEX P – Reports [ENTER all the procedures for report submissions & report format.]
49
50 Appendix 1 – Reporting Matrix
51
52 ANNEX Q – References [ENTER all supporting reference materials, publication, regulations etc.]
53
54 ANNEX R – Distribution [ENTER the list of agencies to receive this plan. Cover plan classification,
55 handling and declassification procedures.]
56

Appendix D

- 1
- 2
- 3
- 4
- 5
- 6
- 7
- 8
- 9
- 10
- 11
- 12
- 13
- 14
- 15
- 16
- 17
- 18
- 19
- 20
- 21
- 22
- 23

Intentionally Blank

1
2
3
4
5
6
7
8
9
10
11
12
13
14
15
16
17
18
19
20
21
22
23
24
25
26
27
28
29
30
31
32
33
34
35
36
37
38
39
40
41
42
43
44
45
46

APPENDIX E
ANTITERRORISM CHECKLIST

1. Introduction.

Protection of DOD assets is an inherent obligation of military commanders. The following checklist is a self-assessment, management tool that can be used by the commander and/or antiterrorism officer to assess the status of his/her AT program. This checklist is structured around the AT Standards outlined in DODI 2000.16. Not all the standards are applicable to all levels of command, therefore, commanders and Service AT guidance should be used where applicable.

YES or NO

2. Questions for Commanders/Managers to Evaluate AT Program Adequacy:

a. Program Review

Is commander/ATO aware of and integrating other programs supporting FP?

Do ALL installation units participate in RAMs?

_____ Is the AT program comprehensive, current, and effective?

_____ Can the unit do the mission under FPCONs in use?

_____ Are critical FPCONs compromised for unit morale or convenience?

ATO staff and resources sufficient, e.g., reliable and accessible SIPRNET access?

_____ Is AT a routine element of daily mission planning and execution?

_____ Are operational patterns varied?

_____ Is OPSEC included in mission planning?

_____ Does the unit continually monitor threat and corresponding security posture?

_____ Does the unit monitor and control access of visitors and employees in sensitive areas?

_____ Has the threat level changed since last VA?

Appendix E

- 1 _____ Is the threat assessment current and valid?
2
3 _____ Are RAMs having the desired effect on unit awareness, readiness, and
4 deterrence?
5
6 _____ Does the unit have an AT program and security posture appropriate for
7 mission and potential threat?
8
9 _____ AT Officer appointed?
10
11 _____ AT Working Group (ATWG) designated?
12
13 _____ DIA, service specific and/or FBI Threat Assessment current?
14
15 _____ Vulnerability assessment current?
16
17 _____ AT Plan complete?
18
19 _____ Program review within past 12 months?
20
21 _____ AT Plan exercised within past 12 months?
22
23 _____ AT Level I training current?
24
25 _____ Have you reviewed DODI 2000.16, *DeOD Antiterrorism Standards*, and
26 appropriate commander / Service AT guidance?
27
28 _____ Is commander/Service AT guidance implemented?
29
30 b. Organize for AT:
31
32 _____ Does unit have adequate focus on AT?
33
34 _____ Is unit ATO school trained?
35
36 _____ Are right functions represented in ATWG?
37
38 _____ Is ATWG active? Meeting minutes documented, open items follow-up and
39 closed? Accomplishments?
40
41 c. Threat Assessment:
42
43 _____ Do Threat Assessments provided by DIA, service counterintelligence,
44 intelligence and/or FBI integrate with and/or the local threat assessment process:
45
46 _____ Identify specific terrorist capabilities, weapons, and tactics (to include
47 WMD)?
-

- 1
 - 2 Consider the vulnerability of the facilities and utilities?
 - 3
 - 4 Consider the criticality of the facilities and utilities?
 - 5
 - 6 Provide the necessary information the commander to help tailor FPCONs?
 - 7
 - 8 Have a review mechanism to provide up to date information?
 - 9
 - 10 Is the unit aware of current and potential threats (conventional and WMD)?
 - 11
 - 12 Do you know the DIA and/or FBI (CONUS) assessed threat level for the
 - 13 area?
 - 14
 - 15 Has the commander assigned higher local threat level?
 - 16
 - 17 Is a formal intel assessment on hand & current?
 - 18
 - 19 Relationship with supporting Intel activity?
 - 20
 - 21 Is counter-intelligence or law enforcement support needed?
 - 22
 - 23 Local information considered?
 - 24
 - 25 Local information network established? Part of ATWG?
 - 26
 - 27 Aggressive list of threat options identified?
 - 28
 - 29 d. Vulnerability Assessment:
 - 30
 - 31 Has a local vulnerability assessment been conducted within the past year?
 - 32
 - 33 Did the vulnerability assessment identify vulnerabilities and means to
 - 34 eliminate or mitigation them?
 - 35
 - 36 Did the vulnerability assessment identify options for enhanced protection of
 - 37 DOD personnel and assets?
 - 38
 - 39 Does the AT vulnerability assessment assess the following functional areas
 - 40 at a minimum:
 - 41
 - 42 AT Plans and Programs.
 - 43
 - 44 Counterintelligence, Law Enforcement, Liaison, and Intelligence Support.
 - 45
 - 46 AT Physical Security Measures.
-

Appendix E

1
2
3
4
5
6
7
8
9
10
11
12
13
14
15
16
17
18
19
20
21
22
23
24
25
26
27
28
29
30
31
32
33
34
35
36
37
38
39
40
41
42
43
44
45
46

_____ Vulnerability to a Threat and Terrorist Incident Response Measures.

_____ Vulnerability Assessment for Terrorist Use of WMD.

_____ Availability of resources to support plans as written.

_____ Frequency and extent to which plans have been exercised.

_____ Level and adequacy of support from the host nation, local community, and where appropriate, inter-Service and tenant organizations to enhance force protection measures or respond to a terrorist incident.

_____ Status of formal and informal agreements to support AT functions.

_____ Does the vulnerability assessment team contain expertise in order to meet the intent of providing comprehensive assessments?

_____ Is there a process to track and identify vulnerabilities through the chain of command?

e. MOU/MOA

_____ Is unit conforming to and employing MOU/MOA for local support?

_____ Does unit or any detached personnel fall under State Department for force protection?

_____ Are State Department's force protection instructions on hand for those individuals?

_____ Are organizations identified with jurisdiction for law enforcement, health, safety, and welfare of assigned service members on and off duty?

_____ Is unit conforming to jurisdictional agreements in these areas (SOFA, inter-agency)?

_____ Are local community organizations with shared security interests (police, federal law enforcement, hospitals, and public health) identified?

_____ Are mutual aid agreements in place with local community to leverage shared interests?

_____ Have mutual aid agreements been reviewed by higher HQ?

_____ Are mutual aid agreements executable (liability, jurisdiction, capabilities)?

1
2
3
4
5
6
7
8
9
10
11
12
13
14
15
16
17
18
19
20
21
22
23
24
25
26
27
28
29
30
31
32
33
34
35
36
37
38
39
40
41
42
43
44
45
46

f. Mitigate WMD Effects

_____ Has unit prepared for WMD attack?

_____ Does AT plan consider terrorist use of WMD (CBRNE)?

_____ Does the command have the procedures to process immediately through the chain of command reports of significant information obtained identifying organizations with WMD capability in their AOR? operational area?

_____ Is an estimate of terrorist potential use of WMD indicated in the local threat assessment?

_____ Procedures for detection of unconventional CBRNE attacks?

_____ Does unit training include awareness of indicators of unconventional attacks?

_____ Do all personnel have individual protective equipment available?

_____ Are collective protective systems available?

_____ Is CBRNE detection equipment available?

_____ Is decontamination equipment available?

g. Antiterrorism Plan

_____ Is the AT Plan signed?

_____ Does the installation incorporate AT planning into operations orders for temporary operations or exercises?

_____ Does the plan specify the AT mission and concept of operation?

_____ Does the plan layout the task organization and Mission Essential ~~or~~ Vulnerable Areas (MEVAs)?

_____ Does the plan include the Risk Management process, to include annual AT Threat Assessment with WMD coverage?

_____ Is there a process, based on local terrorism threat information, to raise FPCONs?

_____ Does the plan provide actions at each FPCON?

Appendix E

1
2
3
4
5
6
7
8
9
10
11
12
13
14
15
16
17
18
19
20
21
22
23
24
25
26
27
28
29
30
31
32
33
34
35
36
37
38
39
40
41
42
43
44
45
46

_____ Are site-specific AT measures, linked to FPCONs classified as a minimum,
CONFIDENTIAL?

_____ Is the current FPCON measure adequate for the local threat?

_____ Does the plan provide a baseline for normal ops?

_____ Does plan provide diagram for Random Antiterrorism Measures (RAMs)?

_____ Does the plan include Security Force operations (including augmentation
forces) and post priorities?

_____ Has the plan been reviewed within the past year to remediate procedural and
resource shortfalls?

_____ Has the plan been approved by higher headquarters (HQ)?

_____ Received/approved AT plans from lower HQ?

_____ Is the plan executable?

_____ Is the plan resourced?

_____ Does the plan mitigate vulnerabilities with policy and procedural solutions?

_____ Does the plan address response to incident and mass casualties?

_____ Does the AT plan contain, as a minimum, site specific procedures for:

_____ Terrorism Threat Assessments?

_____ Vulnerability Assessments?

_____ Program Review?

_____ Training?

_____ AT Physical Security Measures?

_____ Mass notification procedures?

_____ Incident Response Measures?

_____ Consequence Management Measures?

-
- 1 _____ AT considerations for plans/orders for temporary operations or exercises?
2
3 Does the command have an adequate “Baseline” security posture to include:
4
5 _____ General AT and physical security awareness?
6
7 _____ Adequately equipped and trained First Response Forces?
8
9 _____ A security posture, capable of sustained operations and commensurate to
10 the local threat, that adequately protects personnel and assets?
11
12 _____ Plans and procedures to transition from Normal Operations to an Elevated
13 state of readiness/execution?
14
15 _____ Is there a process for you to evaluate subordinate units’ and/or tenant
16 commands’ knowledge and status of their AT responsibilities?
17
18 h. Training and Exercises:
19
20 Are personnel receiving the appropriate levels of AT training to include:
21
22 _____ Level I-IV training.
23
24 _____ Level II training.
25
26 _____ Level III training.
27
28 _____ Level IV training.
29
30 ~~_____ High Risk Personnel.~~
31
32 _____ AOR specific training prior to deployment.
33
34 _____ A system to track and document training.
35
36 _____ Is individual awareness of terrorism threat sufficient for threat
37 environment/mission?
38
39 ~~_____ Annual Level I training current?~~
40
41 ~~_____ AOR updates current and briefed?~~
42
43 _____ Special local individual protective measures briefed and used?
44
45 _____ Has the command conducted field and staff training (annually) to exercise
46 AT plans to include?
-

Appendix E

1
2
3
4
5
6
7
8
9
10
11
12
13
14
15
16
17
18
19
20
21
22
23
24
25
26
27
28
29
30
31
32
33
34
35
36
37
38
39
40
41
42
43
44
45
46

- AT Physical Security measures.
- Terrorist Incident Response measures.
- Terrorist Consequence Management measures.

FPCON attainment procedures.

Does the command maintain exercise AARs/Lessons Learned and document actions taken to remediate identified shortfalls for at least a year?

Does command pre-deployment training include:

- Credible deterrence/response.
- Deterrence-specific tactics, techniques, and procedures.
- Terrorist scenarios and hostile intent decision-making.

i. Antiterrorism Resources:

- Does AT resource program support the required long-term security posture?
- Defined resource requirements to mitigate security deficiencies?
- Requirements justified with risk analysis?
- Alternative plans, policy, and procedural solutions considered or implemented?

Does the command have a formal process to track, document, and justify resource requirements and identify resource shortfalls to Higher HQ?

Higher HQ approved these requirements?

Does the command request CbT-RIF for emergent and or emergency commander AT requirements?

~~Emergent (OCONUS) needs submitted for immediate support by CbT-RIF?~~

Does the command incorporate AT requirements into the Program Objective Memorandum (POM) process?

POM requirements submitted for out year support of CbT-RIF funded investments?

- 1
2 _____ Status of CbT-RIF and POM requirements in the program/budget process?
3
4 _____ AT and security factors adequately weighed in acquisition and use of
5 facilities (both temporary and permanent)?
6
7 _____ Current facilities conform to DOD and Component AT military
8 construction MILCON standards?
9
10 _____ Do structural engineers and security personnel work together to incorporate
11 AT consideration in building design and review?
12
13 _____ Are DOD AT Standards for buildings incorporated into new constructions?
14
15 _____ Is technology being used to enhance security and human performance?
16
17 _____ Are technologies being identified as recommended/required for higher
18 threat levels/FPCONS?
19
20 _____ Is the AT Officer a member of the Resource Management Committee?
21

22 j. ATO Assigned in Writing

- 23
24 _____ Has the commander designated a Level II qualified/trained commissioned
25 officer, non-commissioned officer, or civilian staff officer in writing as the ATO?
26
27 _____ For deploying organizations (e.g., battalion, squadron, ship) have at least
28 one Level II qualified individual designated in writing?
29
30 _____ Has the ATO attended a Service approved Level II AT Training course?
31

32 **3. Operations Security**

- 33
34 _____ Have procedures been established that prevent terrorists from readily
35 obtaining information about plans and operations (e.g., not publishing the commanding
36 general's itinerary, safeguarding classified material, evaluating articles in installation
37 publications)?
38
39 _____ Does the plan allow for in-depth coordination with the installation's OPSEC
40 program?
41
42 _____ Has an OPSEC annex been included in the contingency plan?
43

44 **4. Threat Information Collection and Analysis**

- 45
46 _____ Has the commander tasked the appropriate organization under his/her
-

1 command to gather, analyze, and disseminate terrorism threat information?

2
3 _____ Are personnel in the command encouraged and trained to report information
4 on individuals, events, or situations that could pose a threat to the security of DOD
5 personnel, families, facilities, and resources?

6
7 _____ Does the command have procedures to receive and process Defense ~~Threat~~
8 ~~Terrorism~~ Warning Reports Messages and/or higher headquarters threat message?

9
10 _____ Does the command have technology to access critical terrorism intelligence
11 e.g., SIPRNET?

12 **5. Threat Information Flow**

13
14
15 _____ Does the command forward all information pertaining to suspected terrorist
16 threats, or acts of terrorism involving DOD personnel or assets for which they have
17 AT responsibility up and down the chain of command?

18
19 _____ Does the command ensure there is intelligence sharing among all organizations?

20
21 _____ Does the command provide tailored threat information for transiting units?

22 **6. Personnel Security**

23
24
25 _____ Has the threat analysis identified individuals vulnerable to terrorist attack?

26
27 _____ Has a training program been established to educate both military and
28 civilian personnel in the proper techniques of personnel protection and security
29 commensurate with the local threat and the type of position held?

30 **7. Executive Protection and High Risk Personnel Security**

31
32
33 _____ Has the command identified high-risk billets and high-risk personnel to
34 higher headquarters annually?

35
36 _____ Have personnel designated as “-Personnel at High-Risk to Terrorist Attack”
37 and “Personnel Assigned to High-Risk Billets” received appropriate AT training?

38
39 _____ Has the command annually reviewed and revalidated the protective services
40 for executives?

41
42 _____ Has the command taken necessary measures to provide appropriate
43 protective services for designated individuals in high-risk billets and high-risk personnel?

44
45 _____ Does the command review needs for supplemental security within 30 days
46 of a change in the Terrorism Threat Level?

1
2
3
4
5
6
7
8
9
10
11
12
13
14
15
16
17
18
19
20
21
22
23
24
25
26
27
28
29
30
31
32
33
34
35
36
37
38
39
40
41
42
43
44
45
46

8. Physical Security

_____ Does the Installation Commander coordinate and integrate subordinate unit physical security plans and measures into the AT plan?

_____ Are physical security measures considered, do they support, and are they referenced in the AT plan to ensure an integrated approach to terrorist threats?

Do AT physical security measures include provisions for the use of:

_____ Physical Structures.

_____ Physical Security Equipment.

_____ Chemical, Biological, Radiological detection & protection equipment.

_____ Security Procedures.

_____ Random Antiterrorism Measures (RAM)

_____ Response Forces

_____ Emergency measures sufficient to achieve the desired level of AT protection and preparedness to respond to terrorist attack.

_____ Are RAMs used for both in-place and transiting forces?

_____ Are special threat plans and physical security plans mutually supportive?

_____ Do security measures establish obstacles to terrorist activity (e.g., guards, host-nation forces, lighting, fencing)?

_____ Does the special threat plan include the threats identified in the threat statements of higher HQ?

_____ Does the physical security officer assist in the threat analysis and corrective action?

_____ Does the installation have and maintain detection systems and an appropriate assessment capability?

9. AT Guidance for Off-Installation Housing

_____ Are troops housed off-installation adequately secured?

1 | _____ Do Sservice members in Moderate, Significant, and High threat areas
2 receive instruction and supervision in residential security measures?
3

4 | _____ In such areas, do unit AT response plans include current residence location
5 information for all unit members residing off installation?
6

7 | _____ In such areas, do units coordinate with local law enforcement authorities for
8 protection of unit members residing off-installation (MOUs/MOAs/SOFs)?
9

10 | _____ Do incident response plans include measures for off-installation personnel
11 (personnel warning system)?
12

13 | _____ Does the command have procedures to ensure DOD personnel assigned to
14 Moderate, Significant, and High Terrorism Threat Level areas, who are not provided on-
15 installation or other Government quarters, are furnished guidance on the selection of
16 private residence to mitigate risk of terrorist attack?
17

18 | _____ Does the command have procedures to conduct physical security reviews of
19 off-installation residences for permanent- and temporary-duty DOD personnel in
20 Significant or High Threat Level areas?
21

22 | _____ Based on these physical security reviews, does the command have
23 procedures to provide AT recommendations to residents and facility owners?
24

25 | _____ As suitable, does the command have procedures to recommend to
26 appropriate authorities the construction or lease of housing on an installation or safer
27 area?
28

29 | _____ Does the command have procedures to complete residential security
30 reviews prior to personnel entering into formal contract negotiations for the lease or
31 purchase of off-installation housing in Significant or High Threat areas?
32

33 | _____ Does the command have procedures to include coverage of private
34 residential housing in AT plans where private residential housing must be used in
35 Moderate, Significant, or High Threat Level areas?
36

37 | _____ In Moderate, Significant, or High Threat areas, does the command
38 incorporate family members and dependent vulnerabilities into antiterrorism assessment,
39 mitigation, and reporting tools for:
40

41 | _____ Facilities used by DOD employees and their dependents.
42

43 | _____ Transportation services and routes used by DOD employees and their
44 dependents.
45

46 | _____ Has the staff judge advocate considered the ramifications of imposing these

1 housing policies in CONUS and advised on the consequences?

2
3 **10. Security Structure**

4
5 _____ Does the **AT** plan indicate that the FBI has primary domestic investigative
6 and operational responsibility in the United States and US territories?

7
8 _____ Has coordination with the staff judge advocate been established?

9
10 _____ Does the plan allow for close cooperation among principal agents of the
11 military, civilian, and host-nation communities and Federal agencies?

12
13 _____ Does the plan clearly indicate parameters for use of force, including the
14 briefing of any elements augmenting military police assets?

15
16 _____ Is there a mutual understanding among all local agencies (e.g. military,
17 local FBI resident or senior agent-in-charge, host-nation forces, and local law
18 enforcement) that might be involved in a terrorist incident on the installation regarding
19 authority, jurisdiction, and possible interaction?

20
21 _____ Has the staff judge advocate considered ramifications of closing the post
22 (e.g., possible civilian union problems)?

23
24 _____ Does the **AT** plan identify DOS as having primary investigative and
25 operational responsibility overseas?

26
27 **11. Operations Center**

28
29 _____ Has the operational command and coordination center (operations center)
30 been established and exercised?

31
32 _____ Is the operational command and coordination center based on the needs of
33 the installation while recognizing manpower limitations, resource availability, equipment,
34 and command?

35
36 _____ Does the plan include a location for the operations center?

37
38 _____ Does the plan designate alternate locations for the operations center?

39
40 _____ Does the plan allow for the use of visual aids (chalkboards, maps with
41 overlays, bulletin boards) to provide situation status reports and countermeasures?

42
43 _____ Does the plan create and designate a location for a media center?

44
45 _____ Have the operations and media centers been activated together within the
46 last quarter?

1
2
3
4
5
6
7
8
9
10
11
12
13
14
15
16
17
18
19
20
21
22
23
24
25
26
27
28
29
30
31
32
33
34
35
36
37
38
39
40
41
42
43
44
45
46

_____ Does the operations center have standard operating procedures covering communications and reports to higher HQ?

_____ Does the operations center offer protection from terrorist attack?

12. Terrorist Incident Response Measures (first response)

Has the command prepared installation-wide and/or shipboard terrorist incident response measures which include:

_____ Procedures for determining the nature and scope of the terrorist incident and required response.

_____ Procedures for coordinating security, fire, and medical First Responders.

_____ Steps to reconstitute the installation's ability to perform AT measures

_____ In Moderate, Significant, or High terrorist threat level areas, has the command included residential location information for all DOD personnel and their dependents in their Incident Response Measures?

13. Rules of Engagement (ROE)/Rules of Force (RUF)

_____ Does unit have correct ROE/RUF guidance for the mission and environment?

_____ Do plan/current procedures provide enough "stand-off" to determine hostile intent and make proper decision to use force?

_____ Are troops trained for making ROE/RUF decisions in realistic situations?

_____ Are ROE/threat scenarios adequate & rigorous?

_____ Is unit prepared to apply ROE/RUF for threat scenarios?

14. Terrorist Consequence Management Measures

_____ Do CM measures provide for appropriate emergency response and disaster planning and/or preparedness to respond to a terrorist attack for the installation and/or base engineering, logistics, medical, mass casualty response, transportation, personnel administration, and local and/or host nation support?

_____ Do CM measures include guidelines for pre-deployment and garrison operations, pre-attack procedures, actions during attack, and post-attack actions?

15. General Observations

1 **15. General Observations**
2
3 _____ Was the **AT** plan developed as a coordinated staff effort? |

4
5 _____ Does the **AT** plan outline reporting requirements (e.g., logs, journals, after- |
6 action report)?

7
8 _____ Does the **AT** plan address presence of the media? |

9
10 _____ Does the **AT** plan include communications procedures and communications |
11 nets?

12
13 _____ Does the **AT** plan consider the possible need for interpreters? |

14
15 _____ Does the **AT** plan consider the need for a list of personnel with various |
16 backgrounds to provide cultural profiles on foreign subjects and victims, as well as to
17 assist with any negotiation efforts?

18
19 _____ Does the **AT** plan provide for and identify units that will augment military |
20 police assets?

21
22 _____ Does the **AT** plan delineate specific tasking(s) for each member of the |
23 operations center?

24
25 _____ Does the **AT** plan provide for a response for each phase of antiterrorism |
26 activity (e.g., initial response, negotiation, assault)?

27
28 _____ Does the **AT** plan designate service support communications? |

29
30 _____ Does the **AT** plan make provisions for notification of accident and incident |
31 control officer?

32
33 _____ Does the **AT** plan provide for EOD support? |

34
35 _____ Does the **AT** plan take into consideration the movement from various |
36 locations, including commercial airports, of civilian and military advisory personnel with
37 military transportation assets?

38
39 _____ Does the **AT** plan allow for the purchase and/or use of civilian vehicles, |
40 supplies, food, if needed (including use to satisfy a hostage demand)? Does the **AT** plan
41 make provisions for paying civilian employees overtime if they are involved in a special
42 threat situation?

43
44 _____ Does the **AT** plan take into consideration the messing, billeting, and |
45 transportation of civilian personnel?
46

Appendix E

- 1 _____ Do appropriate personnel have necessary language training?
2
3 _____ Is military working dog support available?
4
5 | _____ Does the command review their own and subordinate AT programs and
6 | plans at least annually to facilitate AT program enhancement?
7
8 | _____ Does the command review the AT program-plan when the terrorist threat
9 | level changes?
10
11 _____ Has the command developed a prioritized list of AT factors for site
12 selection for facilities, either currently occupied or under consideration for occupancy by
13 DOD personnel? AT factors should include, but not limited to, screening from direct fire
14 weapons, building separation, perimeter standoff, window treatments, protection of
15 entrances and exits, parking lots and roadways, standoff zone delineation, security
16 lighting, external storage areas, mechanical and utility systems,
17
18 _____ Has the command used these factors to determine if facilities can
19 adequately protect occupants against terrorism attack?

1
2
3
4
5
6
7
8
9
10
11
12
13
14
15
16
17
18
19
20
21
22
23
24
25
26
27
28
29
30
31
32
33
34
35
36
37
38
39
40
41
42
43
44
45
46

APPENDIX F
FORCE PROTECTION CONDITION SYSTEM

1. General

a. Force Protection Conditions describe the progressive level of countermeasures in response to a terrorist threat to US military facilities and personnel as directed by DOD Directive 2000.12, *DeQD Antiterrorism (AT) Program*. These security measures are approved by the Joint Chiefs of Staff and are designed to facilitate inter-Service coordination and support of US Military antiterrorism activities. They are outlined in DODI O-2000.12-H16, *DeQD Antiterrorism Handbook*, Appendix 3, *DOD FPCON System*. When installations adapt these measures for their site-specific circumstances, they should account for, as a minimum, Combatant Commander/Service requirements, local laws, and SOFA. Per DOD Instruction 2000.16, *DeQD Antiterrorism Standards*, FPCON measures are FOR OFFICIAL USE ONLY. An AT Plan with a complete listing of site-specific AT measures, linked to an FPCON, shall be classified, as a minimum, CONFIDENTIAL. When separated from the AT Plan, specific measures and FPCON measures remain FOR OFFICIAL USE ONLY.

b. The FPCON System is the principal means through which a military commander or DOD civilian exercising equivalent authority applies an operational decision on how to best guard against the threat. These guidelines shall assist commanders in reducing the effect of terrorist and other security threats to DOD units and activities.

c. Creating additional duties and/or watches and heightening security enhance command's personnel awareness and alert posture. These measures display the command's resolve to prepare for and counter the terrorist threat. These actions shall convey to anyone observing the command's activities that it is prepared and an undesirable target, and that the terrorist(s) should look elsewhere for a vulnerable target.

d. The DOD system is generally not applicable to DOD elements for which the Chief of Mission has security responsibility, and may have limited application to DOD elements that are tenants on installations and facilities not controlled by US military commanders or DOD civilian exercising equivalent authority. Still, Commanders of US elements on non-US installations can execute many FPCON measures that do not involve installation level actions, at least to a limited degree. The terminology, definitions, and specific recommended security measures are designed to facilitate inter-Service coordination and support for the combating terrorism efforts of the DOD Components.

2. Force Protection Conditions

There are five FPCONs. Supporting measures for each condition are listed in Appendix 3 of DOD O-2000.12-H. The circumstances that apply and the purposes of each protective posture are as follows:

1 a. FPCON NORMAL applies when a general global threat of possible terrorist
2 activity exists and warrants a routine security posture.

3
4 b. FPCON ALPHA applies when there is an increased general threat of possible
5 terrorist activity against personnel or facilities, the nature and extent are unpredictable.
6 ALPHA measures must be capable of being maintained indefinitely.

7
8 c. FPCON BRAVO applies when an increased or more predictable threat of
9 terrorist activity exists. Sustaining BRAVO measures for a prolonged period may affect
10 operational capability and relations with local authorities.

11
12 d. FPCON CHARLIE applies when an incident occurs or intelligence is
13 received indicating some form of terrorist action or targeting against personnel or
14 facilities is likely. Prolonged implementation of CHARLIE measures may create
15 hardship and affect the activities of the unit and its personnel.

16
17 e. FPCON DELTA applies in the immediate area where a terrorist attack has
18 occurred or when intelligence has been received that terrorist action against a specific
19 location or person is imminent. Normally, this FPCON is declared as a localized
20 condition. FPCON DELTA measures are not intended to be sustained for substantial
21 periods.

22 **3. FPCON Responsibilities**

23
24 a. Geographic Combatant Commanders shall ensure that FPCONs are
25 uniformly implemented and disseminated within their AOR.

26
27 (1) All military commanders and DOD civilians exercising equivalent
28 authority are responsible for ensuring that their subordinates fully understand FPCON
29 declaration procedures and FPCON measures.

30
31 (2) While there is no direct correlation between threat reporting and
32 FPCONs, such information assists commanders in making prudent FPCON declarations.
33 Existence of threat reporting in and of itself should not be the only factor used in
34 determining FPCONs. FPCON declaration should be based on multiple factors that may
35 include, but are not limited to, threat, target vulnerability, criticality of assets, security
36 resource availability, operational and physiological impact, damage control, recovery
37 procedures, international relations, and planned US Government actions that could trigger
38 a terrorist response.

39
40
41 b. The ~~DOD~~-FPCON system allows all military commanders and DOD civilians
42 exercising equivalent authority the flexibility and adaptability to develop and implement
43 AT measures that are more stringent than those mandated by higher authorities whenever
44 FPCONs are invoked. Each set of FPCON measures is the minimum that must be
45 implemented when a change in local threat warrants a change in FPCON or when higher
46 authority directs an increase in FPCON. Authorities directing implementation may

1 augment their FPCON by adding measures from higher FPCONs as necessary.
2

3 (1) Military commanders or DOD civilians exercising equivalent
4 authority may implement additional FPCON measures from higher FPCONs on their own
5 authority, develop additional measures specifically tailored for site-specific security
6 concerns, or declare a higher FPCON for their AOR/installation.
7

8 (2) Subordinate military commanders or DOD civilians exercising
9 equivalent authority at any level may not lower an FPCON or implement measures that
10 are less rigorous than those appropriate for the declared FPCON. Waivers for not
11 complying with prescribed FPCON measures may be obtained by following the
12 procedures in paragraph 6 below.
13

14 (3) It is essential for military commanders and DOD civilians
15 exercising equivalent authority to implement formal analytical processes that result in a
16 set of **AOR operational area** or locality-specific terrorist threat indicators and warnings
17 for use when transitioning from lower to higher FPCONs. Threat credibility, and if
18 known, duration, operational environment (both HN and DOD), asset criticality, mission
19 impact and measures in place that contribute to mitigating the current threat are but a few
20 of the important elements commanders should consider when calibrating FPCON
21 postures. Such processes and measures should be harmonized to the maximum degree
22 possible, taking fully into account differences in threat, vulnerability, criticality, and risk
23 of resources requiring protection.
24

25 (4) Military commanders, DOD civilians exercising equivalent
26 authority, and their staffs shall examine the threat, physical security, terrorist attack
27 consequences, and mission vulnerabilities in the context of specific DOD activities and
28 the declared FPCON. When factors are combined and the collective terrorist threat
29 exceeds the ability of the current physical security system (barriers, surveillance and
30 detection systems, security forces, and dedicated response forces) to provide the level of
31 asset protection required, then implementation of higher FPCONs or additional measures
32 is appropriate.
33

34 **4. FPCON Management and Implementation**

35

36 Implementation of FPCONs does not come without adverse effects on day-to-
37 day operations; the additional costs can be measured and described both quantitatively
38 and qualitatively. The DOD FPCON system acknowledges cost as a significant factor
39 bearing on the selection and maintenance of FPCONs. FPCONs ALPHA and BRAVO
40 include measures that can be sustained for extended periods, consistent with the terrorist
41 threat.
42

43 **5. Random Antiterrorism Measures (RAMs) Management and Implementation**

44

45 a. Commanders and Directors should randomly change their AT tactics;
46 techniques, and procedures so that they ensure a robust security posture from which

1 terrorists cannot easily discern patterns or routines that are vulnerable to attack. An
2 effective RAM program shall enable security to appear not only formidable but also
3 unpredictable and ambiguous to instill uncertainty in terrorist planning. The basic
4 approach for random antiterrorism measures program is to select security measures from
5 higher FPCONs, as well as other measures not normally associated with FPCONs
6 (command developed measures, or locally developed site-specific measures) that can be
7 employed in a random manner to supplement the basic FPCON measures already in
8 place. Using a variety of additional security measures in a normal security posture
9 prevents overuse of security forces, as would be the case if a higher FPCON were to be
10 maintained for an extended period of time. Selected RAMs offer an alternative to full
11 implementation of a higher FPCON level. This is particularly important when terrorist
12 threat estimates suggest that lower FPCONs may not, for the moment, be adequate in
13 view of the risk, vulnerability, and criticality of DOD assets at the installation or facility.
14

15 b. To enhance the overall effectiveness of a given FPCON, unit commanders
16 shall develop and implement a RAMs program as an integral part of their AT program.
17 RAMs should be implemented in a strictly random manner, never using a set time frame
18 or location for a given measure. RAMs should be visible (to confuse surveillance
19 attempts) and should involve the command as a whole, not just the security forces. To be
20 effective, tenant and transient units must be fully integrated into and support the
21 installation or facility RAM program. Advantages of implementing RAMs include, but
22 are not limited to:

23
24 (1) Enables commanders/directors to maintain/sustain a lower FPCON
25 without compromising security effectiveness. Also, it maximizes scarce security
26 resources and minimizes security force burnout and degradation in command AT
27 awareness.
28

29 (2) Makes it more difficult, through variations in security routines, for
30 terrorists to target important assets, build detailed descriptions of significant routines, or
31 predict activities by a specific asset or within a targeted facility or installation. An
32 Installation's tactical Deception Plan can be bolstered by the use of RAMS.
33

34 (3) Helps mask our capabilities to respond to, and defeat, terrorist
35 attacks through unannounced, unpredictable, and visible security measures.
36

37 (4) Increases AT awareness for DOD personnel, their family members,
38 visitors, and neighbors.
39

40 (5) Provides additional training and increases alertness of assigned
41 security personnel and other participants through mental stimulation by changing their
42 routine.
43

44 (6) Validates the installation or facility's capability to execute
45 individual measures from higher FPCON.
46

1 (7) Provides a means to test the procedure, utilizing various methods,
2 resources and personnel to ensure it can be effectively implement in an emergency.

3
4 (78) Enables commanders/directors to more rapidly transition between
5 FPCONs.

6
7 c. In summary, commanders/directors of defense agencies/facilities and their
8 AT officers should keep the following tenets in mind when developing and executing
9 their RAM program.

10
11 (1) The installation ATO is in charge of the RAM program, not the
12 Provost Marshal or Security Officer if a separate entity/individual. However, the ATO
13 should coordinate with the Provost Marshal/Security Officer regarding RAM measures
14 that require utilization of security personnel. The ATO should monitor, track, and
15 analyze RAM implementation efforts.

16
17 (2) A RAM program is part of a proactive and dynamic AT program.

18
19 (3) RAMs should include be visible actions in order to confuse
20 surveillance attempts (to confuse surveillance attempts) and should involve the command
21 as a whole, not just the security forces.

22
23 (4) To be effective, tenant and transient units must be fully integrated
24 into and support the installation or facility RAM program.

25
26 (5) RAMs should be used throughout all FPCON levels and should
27 include other measures not normally associated with an FPCON level such as Command
28 developed measures, or locally developed site-specific measures.

29
30 (6) To confuse terrorist surveillance attempts, RAMs should be
31 implemented in a strictly irregular fashion, never using a set time frame or location for a
32 given measure.

33
34 (7) Local random antiterrorism measures should:

35
36 (a) Assess local threat capabilities and identify effective
37 RAMs countermeasures.

38
39 (b) Mitigate installation/facility vulnerabilities.

40
41 (c) Be conducted both internally to the installation and
42 externally in coordination with local authorities.

43
44 (d) Be compatible/coordinated with ongoing approved
45 surveillance detection and security measures.

1 (e) Not be limited to security force personnel.

2

3 (f) Incorporate analysis of time and space considerations to
4 allow security forces to maintain sufficient standoff while determining hostile intent.

5

6 d. A dynamic and proactive RAM program visibly communicates a command's
7 resolve to prepare for and counter the terrorist threat. A RAMs program shall make it
8 difficult for terrorist planners to discern security and defense and operational patterns.
9 The terrorists should be compelled to look elsewhere for a more static, and therefore
10 more vulnerable, target.

11

12 **6. Deviations From Directed FPCONs**

13

14 If it is determined that certain FPCON measures are inappropriate for current
15 operations, or for proper threat mitigation, military commanders or DOD civilians
16 exercising equivalent authority may request a waiver. The first general/flag officer
17 exercising tactical control (TACON) for force protection or DOD civilian member of the
18 senior executive service (SES) exercising equivalent authority in the chain of command is
19 the approval authority for waiver of specific FPCON measures. Geographic combatant
20 commanders, their deputies, or DOD civilians exercising equivalent authority, may
21 delegate this authority below the general/flag officer level on a case-by-case basis. Any
22 senior military commander having TACON for force protection or DOD civilian member
23 of the SES exercising equivalent authority may withdraw first general/flag officer or
24 DOD civilian authority and retain this authority, at his or her discretion. Waiver
25 authority for specific FPCON measures directed by a higher echelon (above first
26 general/flag officer or DOD civilian member of the SES) rests with the military
27 commander or DOD civilian exercising equivalent authority directing their execution.
28 Nothing in this waiver process is intended to diminish the authority or responsibility of
29 military commanders or DOD civilians exercising equivalent authority, senior to the
30 waiver authority, to exercise oversight of FPCON and RAMs program execution.

31

32 a. To ensure a consistent force protection posture is maintained, tenants on
33 CONUS installations and facilities shall coordinate waiver actions with the host
34 installation before submitting them to their chain of command.

35

36 b. All waiver requests shall be directed to the waiver authority. Information
37 copies shall be sent to the combatant command's joint operations center, major/fleet
38 command's operations center, service operations center, or DOD civilian operations
39 center, as applicable.

40

41 c. Approved waivers, to include mitigating measures or actions, must be
42 forwarded to Service, combatant command, major command, fleet, or DOD civilian
43 equivalent command-level recipients within 24 hours.

44

45 **7. Basic FPCON Procedures**

46

1 a. Once an FPCON is declared, all listed security measures are implemented
2 immediately unless waived by competent authority as described above. The declared
3 FPCON should also be supplemented by a system of RAMs in order to complicate a
4 terrorist group's operational planning and targeting. Specific measures for each FPCON
5 are listed in Appendix X.

6
7 (1) Airfield specific measures are for installations and facilities with a
8 permanently functioning airfield. Installations and facilities with an emergency
9 helicopter pad should review and implement any applicable airfield specific measures
10 when they anticipate air operations.

11
12 (2) Due to their specific security requirements, DOD ships' measures
13 are listed separately. Those measures applying solely to US Navy combatant ships are
14 further identified. Shipboard guidelines are specially tailored to assist commanding
15 officers and ship masters in reducing the effect of terrorist and other security threats to
16 DOD combatant and non-combatant vessels, to include US Army and Military Sealift
17 Command ships worldwide. They provide direction to maximize security for the ship
18 based on current threat conditions consistent with performance of assigned missions and
19 routine functions.

20
21 b. Specific countermeasures were determined taking into consideration the
22 following factors:

23
24 (1) Ability to maintain highest state of operational readiness.

25
26 (2) Measures to improve physical security through the use of duty and
27 guard force personnel limit access to the exposed perimeter areas and interior of the
28 unit/facility by hostile persons, and barriers to physically protect the unit/facility.

29
30 (3) Availability of effective command, control, and communication
31 systems with emphasis on supporting duty/watch officers, security forces, and key
32 personnel.

33
34 (4) An AT awareness program for all personnel.

35
36 (5) Protection of high-risk assets and personnel.

37
38 (6) Measures necessary to limit activities, and visitor/social
39 engagements.

40
41 c. FPCON NORMAL and all FPCON levels should include site specific
42 measures a facility commander deems necessary when establishing a baseline posture.

Appendix F

1
2
3
4
5
6
7
8
9
10
11
12
13
14
15
16
17
18
19
20
21
22

Intentionally Blank

1
2
3
4
5
6
7
8
9
10
11
12
13
14
15
16
17
18
19
20
21
22
23
24
25
26
27
28
29
30
31
32

APPENDIX G
MARITIME SECURITY CONDITIONS

33
34

1. General

35
36
37
38
39

a. The Coast Guard's Maritime Security (MARSEC) Conditions allow security measures to be escalated as the threat increases. Very similar to the 5 colors used by the ~~Office-Department~~ of Homeland security to set domestic security levels, MARSEC conditions help to ensure that the security measures in place are appropriate for the threat level, given the multiple uses of the maritime sector.

40
41
42

b. Each incremental increase in security is valuable; whether it is designed to detect, deter, or defend against an attack. A comprehensive security plan must include strategies that cover this entire spectrum.

43
44
45
46

c. The level of security appropriate for a given target is dependent on all three axes of the risk equation: consequence, vulnerability, and threat, and must be able to detect, deter, or defend on those axes.

d. For each MARSEC level determine:

- (1) Access control.
- (2) Restricted areas.
- (3) Handling of cargo.
- (4) Delivery of stores / supplies.
- (5) Security monitoring.
- (6) Security duties.

47
48
49
50
51
52
53
54
55
56
57
58
59
60
61
62
63
64
65
66
67
68
69
70
71
72
73
74
75
76
77
78
79
80
81
82
83
84
85
86
87
88
89
90
91
92
93
94
95
96
97
98
99
100

2. MARSEC I.

a. MARSEC I is the "new normal". It represents the baseline threat we live with everyday - heightened security and balance in all missions with stronger interagency coordination. Security measures in MARSEC I are the minimum measures which should be sustainable indefinitely.

(1) Focuses on increased awareness and associated increases in assets dedicated to port security missions.

(2) Establishes command and control (C2) and intelligence foundation for heightened levels of maritime security.

(3) Requires significant resources to establish new programs (Sea

1 Marshals, Port Vulnerability Assessment & Intelligence/Investigation teams) in all ports
2 and to bolster US Coast Guard and other government agency (OGA) assets in selected
3 high priority ports.

4
5 (4) MARSEC I is generally equivalent to Homeland Security Advisory
6 System (HSAS) conditions Green, Blue, and Yellow.

7
8 b. Activities:

9
10 (1) Increased intelligence & fusion.

11
12 (2) Increased visibility of cargo, people, & vessels.

13
14 (3) Enhanced C2 interoperability/ connectivity.

15
16 (4) Increased Security Zones.

17
18 (5) Increased port security patrols.

19
20 (6) Increased control of vessel movements.

21
22 (7) Increased protection of assets & critical infrastructure.

23
24 (8) Increased air surveillance in port and offshore.

25
26 (9) Enhanced risk management – high interest vessels.

27
28 (10) Improve Federal / State / local / private sector coordination /
29 intelligence / information sharing.

30
31 (11) Research and development.

32
33 (12) Require / approve / exercise security plans (facility/vessel port).

34
35 (13) Increase facility / vessel security inspections.

36
37 c. Capabilities:

38
39 (1) Intelligence & Investigation Teams.

40
41 (2) Port Vulnerability Assessment Teams

42
43 (3) Advanced Notice of Arrival.

44
45 (4) Vessel / Facility / Port Inspection Teams.

- 1 (5) Improved C2 systems.
- 2
- 3 (6) Increased boats/crews in strategic ports.
- 4
- 5 (7) Increased aircraft flight hours.
- 6
- 7 (8) Vessel Traffic Systems / automated identification system.
- 8
- 9 (9) Increase port security surge capability.
- 10
- 11 (10) Sea Marshal Teams.
- 12
- 13 (11) Maritime Safety and Security Teams.
- 14
- 15 (12) Pollution Strike Teams.
- 16
- 17 (13) Contingency planners.
- 18
- 19 (14) Other Federal, State & local agencies.
- 20
- 21 (15) Private sector.
- 22

23 3. MARSEC II.

24
25 a. MARSEC II is set when there is a heightened threat of an unlawful act
26 against a port, facility, vessel, or other component of the marine transportation system
27 and intelligence indicates that terrorists are likely to be active within a specific period or
28 a specific area, or against a specific class of target. The risk level may also indicate that a
29 specific segment of the industry may be in jeopardy but no specific target is identified.
30 Security measures in MARSEC II should be sustainable for as long as the threat lasts.

- 31
 - 32 (1) Heightened Risk – Focused Security, Prioritized Missions.
 - 33
 - 34 (2) MARSEC II corresponds to HSAS level Orange.
 - 35
 - 36 b. Activities: All MARSEC I activities plus:
 - 37
 - 38 (1) Movement of major cutters and patrol boats to selected ports.
 - 39
 - 40 (2) Heightened port control & security.
 - 41
 - 42 (3) Increased air surveillance of port and its offshore approaches.
 - 43
 - 44 (4) Increased critical infrastructure protection.
 - 45
 - 46 (5) Increased Aids to Navigation and ice breaking services as required.
-

1
2
3
4
5
6
7
8
9
10
11
12
13
14
15
16
17
18
19
20
21
22
23
24
25
26
27
28
29
30
31
32
33
34
35
36
37
38
39
40
41
42
43
44
45
46

c. Capabilities: All MARSEC I assets plus:

- (1) Limited Reserve Component call-up.
- (2) Deploy Maritime Safety and Security Teams.
- (3) Increased level of small boat & cutter resources.
- (4) Increased aircraft flight hours.
- (5) Enhanced DOD & OGA support.
- (6) Enhanced posture will be result of limited reserve call-up, targeted redirection of USCG assets to port security missions, and increased reliance on DOD/OGA support.
- (7) Other CG mission performance will degrade without significant increase in resources (Cutters, boats, aircraft, personnel)

4. MARSEC III.

a. MARSEC III is set when an attack is thought to be imminent or intelligence indicates that terrorists have chosen specific targets, or an attack has already taken place and there is indication that similar targets or other targets in the same region may be at jeopardy. MARSEC III measures should be sustainable for about 7 days.

- (1) Incident Imminent – Exert Control, Stop Doing Other Missions.
- (2) MARSEC III corresponds to HSAS level Red.

b. Activities: All MARSEC II activities plus:

- (1) Specific movement of major cutters and patrol boats to high risk ports.
- (2) Highest level of port control & security.
- (3) Highest level of air and surface surveillance of port and its offshore approaches.
- (4) Highest level of protection for critical infrastructure.
- (5) Increased Aids to Navigation and ice breaking services as required.

c. Capabilities: All MARSEC II assets plus:

- 1
- 2 (1) Partial mobilization of Reserve component.
- 3
- 4 (2) Additional small boats, cutters, & crews.
- 5
- 6 (3) Additional fixed/rotary wing aircraft & crews.
- 7
- 8 (4) Increased DOD & OGA support.
- 9
- 10 (5) Enhanced posture will be result of partial reserve mobilization,
- 11 redirection of all CG assets to port security missions, and heavy reliance on DOD/OGA
- 12 support.
- 13
- 14 (6) Posture will only be sustainable for very short period of time (2-3
- 15 weeks).
- 16

17 **5. Considerations**

18 a. **Security vs. access.**

- 19
- 20
- 21 (1) Security measures may restrict use of waterways.
- 22
- 23 (2) Security measures may restrict access to information.
- 24

25 b. **Security vs. commerce.** Almost every security measure implemented serves
26 to impede commerce, either indirectly by delaying ships and cargo, or by adding direct
27 cost.

28

29 c. **Security vs. environment.** Not only are resources potentially shifted from
30 environmental protection and response missions to security missions, but some of the
31 increased security measures come at the expense of the environment. These include:

- 32
- 33 (1) Security initiatives may take resources away from pollution
- 34 prevention and response.
- 35
- 36 (2) Security measures may require more land and water be available
- 37 for commercial use.
- 38
- 39 (3) Limited access (physical and cyber) may adversely impact
- 40 response effectiveness.
- 41
- 42 (4) Hampering effective environmental response due to restrictions on
- 43 physical and cyber access.
- 44

45 d. **Security vs. safety.** Security measures should be crafted in a way that does
46 not jeopardize safety.

47

Appendix G

- 1 (1) Increased duties related to security may cause crew fatigue or may
- 2 divert attention from vital safety functions.
- 3
- 4 (2) Access controls limit resources on hand to prevent incidents.

1
2
3
4
5
6
7
8
9
10
11
12
13
14
15
16
17
18
19
20
21
22
23
24
25
26
27
28
29
30
31
32
33
34
35
36
37
38
39
40
41
42
43
44
45
46

APPENDIX H
HIGH RISK PERSONNEL PROTECTION

1. General

a. The combatant commanders have substantial AT responsibility for DOD personnel in their AORs assigned to high-risk billets (HRB) or high-risk positions. High risk personnel (HRP) assigned to high-risk positions become eligible for advanced AT training and protection.

b. The designation of personnel or billets as “high-risk” imposes a requirement on both the incumbents and the government to take special precautions to ensure the safety and security of these individuals and their family members.

2. High Risk Personnel Protection

a. DOD Directive 2000.12, *DoD Antiterrorism (AT) Program*, addresses the need to provide protection to those military officers, DOD civilians, and their family members who are assigned to high risk billets and/or by virtue of their rank or grade, assignment or symbolic value, or relative isolation, are more likely to be attractive targets to terrorists.

b. DOD Instruction 2000.16, *DoD Antiterrorism Standards*, establishes two standards directly pertaining to “Training for High Risk Personnel and High Risk Billets” and “Executive Protection and High Risk Personnel Security”. Chapter 18 of DOD O-2000.12-H, *DoD Antiterrorism Handbook*, provides specific information on the training programs available for DOD executives.

c. Protective Service Operations (PSO) entail the protection of dignitaries and other high risk personnel in the combatant commander’s area of responsibility where significant threat exists. Those threats include assaults, kidnappings, assassinations, and attempts to embarrass the US Government. For purposes of this appendix, the term "executive" applies to all persons requiring additional security protection because they are assigned to high risk billets or have been designated as high risk personnel.

d. The specific supplemental security measures that may be furnished to executives are subject to a wide range of legal and policy constraints. US law establishes stringent requirements that must be met before certain security measures may be implemented. DOD component regulations, instructions, and legal opinions may further constrain implementation of the executive protective measures described in this appendix. SOFAs and MOUs between the US Government and a foreign government shall also limit use of supplemental security measures. The US Government contracted use of land or buildings for use by the Department of Defense may also limit application of certain security techniques. All of these constraints should be carefully considered when conducting security surveys, developing plans, and implementing additional security measures to protect executives.

3. Executive Protection Goals

a. In the discussion that follows, several measures are outlined which can afford DOD executives additional protection against terrorist acts. The primary purpose underlying these measures is to:

(1) Delay at a Distance. Increase the time that elapses between the detection of an imminent terrorist attack and the actual onset of an attack to permit the arrival of response forces or the successful evacuation of executives.

(2) Delay to Permit Flight. Increase the amount of time that elapses between the onset of an attack and terrorist access to executives to permit the arrival of response forces or the successful evacuation of executives under attack.

(3) Delay, Hold, and Counterattack. Increase the duration of an attack by allowing executives, their staffs, and their families to remain secure in a safe haven until a response force can arrive to repulse the attack, apprehend the terrorists, and relieve the executives and those with them in the safe haven.

b. Each supplemental security measure should be applied judiciously. There is a clear trade-off between increasing the level of executive office and residence AT measures and the need to preserve the anonymity of executives to avoid activity that may point to the executive's prominence or criticality.

c. Supplemental AT measures can be expensive. The expense should be measured not just in terms of dollars, but also in terms of changes to organizational routine. Therefore, two primary questions must be addressed prior to the implementation of potentially bold, disruptive, and expensive supplemental security enhancements.

(1) What are the most cost-effective means of enhancing the security of executives at risk? How many changes in organizational routines and personal behavior shall have to be made in order for security measures to be effective in reducing the vulnerability of executives and the risk of terrorist attacks?

(2) What are the anticipated costs of additional security measures in terms of dollars, organizational functionality, and mission capability?

d. The security enhancements described in this appendix shall be even more effective if the executives and their families take full advantage of the enhancements and reinforce the security measures. If executives do not change their behavior to accommodate additional security and protective measures, then their behavior can effectively defeat the purpose of the additional protection.

e. Security measures can be enhanced to deter almost any terrorist threat. However, there may be a point where it is no longer economical to add layer upon layer of protective measures to deter a threat that is capable of overwhelming available

1 protective measures. When facing a well-armed and capable terrorist threat, additional
2 security measures coupled with an alternative security posture may provide the greatest
3 deterrence to a terrorist attack.

4
5 **4. Supplemental Security Measures for Executives.**
6

7 Sound AT principles apply to both executive offices and residences. The
8 following principles should be reviewed prior to implementing supplemental AT
9 measures.

10
11 a. A thorough physical security survey serves as the foundation for a strong
12 executive protection program. Physical security surveys of the offices and residences of
13 DOD elements and personnel attached to US Embassies should be performed by the DoS.
14 Cognizant physical security and facilities engineering staffs should perform surveys of
15 other DOD facilities.

16
17 b. The optimal approach to a physical security site survey is from the viewpoint
18 of a potential terrorist. The survey should examine avenues of approach to the
19 installation, facility, or residence; points of access to the executive offices or residences;
20 and how attacks on offices, residences, or other frequently used facilities could be
21 mounted.

22
23 c. A technical threat assessment is the next step in evaluating the need for
24 supplemental executive AT measures. It provides a thorough and detailed assessment of
25 the weapons and tactics terrorists might use to attack the structure where DOD executives
26 work and reside, as well as providing the basis for the development engineering design
27 requirements. (See DOD O-12000.12-H, Chapter 21, *Individual Protective Measures*, for
28 detailed information on a thorough technical TA.).

29
30 d. A technical assessment of responses provides engineers information on the
31 anticipated performance of the security forces responding to a terrorist threat and the
32 expected or desired behavior of the protected executives.

33
34 e. Security planners require information on the expected duration of a terrorist
35 attack on the structure housing executives prior to security force response. A comparison
36 of terrorist threat capabilities and the security response force capabilities provides
37 significant AT system performance parameters. These parameters can be quantified and
38 used to develop detailed plans, drawings, and AT equipment acquisition plans.

39
40 f. While AT enhancement measures are intended to provide additional
41 protection for executives, the primary purpose of these measures is to increase time
42 required by terrorists to penetrate the executive's office or residence.

43
44 **5. Security in the Office**
45

46 a. The office environment should normally provide executives the greatest

1 degree of AT protection. AT measures, guards, security checkpoints, office workers,
2 aides, and/or secretaries all serve to insulate the executives from potential threats.
3 Unfortunately, the considerable media attention provided to attacks on executives in
4 government facilities may further entice terrorists. Hence, there may be a need to
5 enhance security measures to offset the escalating capability of attack on more secure
6 office areas by terrorist groups.

7
8 b. The following measures can be selectively implemented to enhance executive
9 office AT security:

10
11 (1) Increase Threat Detection Time by installing sensors on perimeters
12 and barriers.

13
14 (a) Install surveillance systems, including seismic, acoustic,
15 and infrared sensors at or beyond the outer perimeter; supplement these systems with
16 closed circuit TV and/or imaging infrared systems tied into the alert security response
17 force staging area.

18
19 (b) Extend restricted areas or exclusion zones and relocate
20 access control points from the executive's office or residence to a point closer to the
21 boundary of the installation.

22
23 (c) Increase and extend intrusion detection sensors from
24 within the installation or facility perimeter to the installation perimeter, allowing the
25 sensors to collect additional data in order to classify and identify an intrusion before the
26 response force arrives at scene or track of the intruder.

27
28 (d) Increase the number of surveillance and duress detection
29 systems within the executive office area as well as approaches to the office area.

30
31 (2) Increase Threat Delay Time between perimeter and executive
32 office building.

33
34 (a) Install vehicle barriers and realign roadways to eliminate
35 straight, level stretches of road in excess of 50 meters in length.

36
37 (b) Increase concentric rings of fences, Jersey barricades,
38 planters, bollards, and vehicle and/or personnel barriers.

39
40 (c) Install access control areas, supplemented by fire doors
41 and/or security doors kept in a closed condition, between the entrance to the building
42 housing executive offices and the executive office area itself.

43
44 (d) Confuse, Camouflage, and Deceive Observers by Hiding
45 Executives' Locations.

1 (e) Consider relocating executives to buildings not usually
2 associated with office activities, e.g., barracks, motor pool, R&D facilities.

3
4 (f) Consider constructing office areas in barracks, motor pool,
5 R&D facilities, etc.

6
7 (g) Add executive style, decorative lighting and window
8 treatments to several different areas of office buildings to minimize differences in
9 external appearances between executive and non-executive offices.

10
11 (3) Increase Delay Time between the entrance to the building housing
12 executives and the executive office area.

13
14 (a) Consider the addition of fire doors, access control points,
15 dead-end corridors, and mid-corridor physical barriers to complicate access to executive
16 office areas.

17
18 (b) Consider the addition of security devices which when
19 activated disrupt the ability of intruders to retain their thought processes. These types of
20 security devices include flashing strobe lights, fog generators, noise generators, sirens,
21 and fire extinguishing systems.

22
23 (4) Increase Delay Time and make access more difficult within the
24 executive office structure.

25
26 (a) Replace standard doors and doorframes in areas leading to
27 executive offices with high security doors and doorframes.

28
29 (b) Install high security grating; wire mesh, or other materials
30 to bar access to executive's office area through utility tunnels or conduits.

31
32 (c) Strengthen walls, floors, and ceilings against improvised
33 explosive devices, small arms fire, incendiary devices, and powered hand tools by
34 substituting steel plate, concrete filled, steel reinforced cinder blocks, or other ballistic
35 resistant materials for plaster/lath or wallboard room dividers.

36
37 (d) Add steel plates or other ballistic materials in crawl spaces
38 above dropped ceilings; extend walls separating executive office area from other portions
39 of an office building to prevent unobserved and undetected access to space of dropped
40 ceilings.

41
42 (5) Increase hold time to contain penetrators.

43
44 (a) Add positive action controls to facility and doors and gates
45 to ensure the gates and doors default to a closed and locked condition unless manually
46 released.

1
2 (b) Add positive action controls to access control areas such
3 that persons inside an access control area can neither advance nor withdraw without
4 affirmative action by a security officer posted outside the access control area.

5
6 (6) Increase protection for building occupants against ballistic threats
7 to windows and exterior walls.

8
9 (a) Substitute polycarbonate panels for glass windows; add a
10 ballistic absorbing plastic film to the interior side of glass windows.

11
12 (b) Add exterior screens/plates to cover window areas and
13 protect against gunfire and grenade/bomb fragments.

14
15 (c) Install blast curtains, metal blinds, metal shutters or other
16 window treatments in executives' offices to protect interior space from glass shards and
17 other small projectiles.

18
19 (7) Install emergency executive support facilities including a safe
20 haven with duress system and telephone, and an emergency evacuation capability.

21
22 (a) Consider installation of helicopter landing aids on the roof
23 of a structure or on an adjacent field far removed from parking areas.

24
25 (b) Consider installing a safe haven or other reinforced
26 security structure adjacent to a helicopter landing facility to provide a secure waiting
27 place for executives until a rescue helicopter with additional supporting air and ground
28 units can extract the executives.

29
30 (8) Office Security Practices and Procedures.

31
32 (a) Executives should discourage their staff from disclosing
33 the executive's whereabouts or activities when taking telephone messages.

34
35 (b) An executive's staff should use caution when opening
36 executive mail. In particular, the staff should look for letters or packages that might
37 contain improvised explosive devices, or evidence of biological agents, e.g., suspicious
38 white powder.

39
40 (c) Strictly limit access to the executive office area.

41
42 (d) Limit publicity about the executive to a bare minimum;
43 keep official biographies short; provide minimal information concerning the executive's
44 personal interests and hobbies, and consider using outdated photographs if a publicity
45 photograph is absolutely essential.

1 (e) The executive should avoid working alone, late at night,
2 and on days when the remainder of the staff is absent.

3
4 (f) If late night work is necessary, the executive should work
5 in conference rooms or internal offices where observation from the outside of the
6 building is not possible. The executive should notify the security force that they shall be
7 working late and ask that they look in periodically. Executives should enter and exit
8 several offices, turning lights on and off before going to their own offices to disguise the
9 purpose of their activities to outside observers.

10
11 (g) Executives should avoid placing office furnishings
12 directly in front of exterior windows.

13
14 (9) Official business away from the office.

15
16 (a) Executives and their staff should discuss security
17 requirements with the person planning the function.

18
19 (b) The executive should travel to and from the function with
20 an escort.

21
22 (c) The executive's travel route should be chosen carefully to
23 avoid potential hazard areas.

24
25 (d) The executive's planned attendance at official functions
26 should not be publicized if at all possible.

27
28 (e) An attempt should be made for the executive to sit away
29 from both public areas and windows.

30
31 (f) The sponsor(s) of the function should be encouraged to
32 close the curtains to minimize the likelihood that anyone outside shall be able to see
33 inside and determine who is attending the function and where they are located. This is
34 extremely important for an evening function, when a well-lit interior can be easily viewed
35 from a darkened exterior.

36
37 (g) The executive's staff should request that external
38 floodlights be used to illuminate the area around the building where an evening function
39 shall occur.

40
41 **6. Residential Safety**

42
43 The residential environment may provide executives a more limited degree of
44 AT security. Executive residences are often located in more secluded areas of the
45 installation or off the installation in the local economy and therefore may appear to
46 present a "softer target" to terrorists. AT measures, guards, security checkpoints,

1 household staff, aides, and/or secretaries can assist in insulating the executives from
2 potential threats. An executive's entire lifestyle should be included in security surveys
3 used to assess the need for supplemental AT security measures. The executive's
4 residence and transportation between the residence and the office should also be
5 examined for vulnerabilities.

6
7 a. The same principles used to identify supplemental AT improvements in an
8 office environment apply to executives' home environments as well. Recall that the
9 purposes of AT enhancements are:

10
11 (1) Increase the amount of time terrorists need to initiate and complete
12 an attack on executives while at home, thereby giving response forces more time to
13 rescue executives and their family members.

14
15 (2) Reduce the potential threat to executives and their families as a
16 consequence of a terrorist assault mounted against the residence.

17
18 (3) Increase the amount of time between detection of a threat and the
19 onset of hostile actions.

20
21 (4) Delay the terrorists as long as possible; prevent their access to the
22 executives and their family members on the one hand, and make the terrorists' departure
23 from the scene to escape prosecution difficult; provided that in so doing, the lives of
24 executives and their family members are not further jeopardized.

25
26 (5) Provide a safe haven that executives and their family members may
27 flee for security pending the arrival of a security response force.

28
29 b. Site Selection.

30
31 (1) Avoid selecting residences previously used by other senior US
32 Government or foreign government officials.

33
34 (2) Avoid selecting residences previously attacked by terrorist groups.

35
36 (3) While terrorist groups conduct surveillance to identify targets,
37 mistakes have been made in the past. DOD personnel should avoid leasing residences
38 previously used by representatives of governments or organizations known to be targets
39 of various terrorist groups. DOD personnel leasing residences formerly used by
40 representatives of such governments may be placing themselves unnecessarily at risk of
41 being attacked as a result of mistaken identity.

42
43 c. The following measures can be selectively implemented to enhance executive
44 residential security:

45
46 (1) Increase time interval between detection of a threat and the onset of

- 1 hostile terrorist acts.
2
3 (a) Ensure all door locks and window clasps are working.
4
5 (b) Ensure that all doors and windows are properly secured to
6 their frames and the frames are properly anchored to the residential structure.
7
8 (c) Consider locking the driveway gates with a security lock
9 to deter/delay entry.
10
11 (d) Consider installing a through-door viewing device or
12 visitor intercom.
13
14 (e) Consider installing security lights to aid in viewing
15 entrances.
16
17 (f) Increase the number of physical barriers between the outer
18 perimeter of the residence and the interior of the residence.
19
20 (g) Add heavy, remotely operated gates to all fences, walls,
21 and perimeter barriers, consistent with the penetration resistance of the barrier, between
22 the residence, the street, and adjacent neighbors.
23
24 (h) Create a vestibule or "air lock" between living quarters
25 and the exterior of a residence to ensure that no one can go from outside the residence
26 directly into the residence.
27
28 (i) Add fire doors or security doors/gates between the
29 bedroom areas and living areas of the residence.
30
31 (2) Increase the time required to penetrate exterior structural walls with
32 explosives, hand-held power tools, and hand tools.
33
34 (a) Consider the addition of additional armor covered by
35 aesthetically pleasing materials to exterior walls.
36
37 (b) Consider the addition of a separate reinforced masonry
38 wall around the residence.
39
40 (3) Increase surveillance of residence and decrease response time.
41
42 (a) Consider installing closed circuit TV systems to permit
43 remote viewing of all residential doors and windows accessible from the ground, nearby
44 structures, trees, or easily acquired platforms (e.g., van parked next to a wall).
45
46 (b) Consider installing area intrusion detection systems
-

1 between the residence perimeter and the residence itself. Increase the number and types
2 of sensors. Add backup communication channels between the intrusion detection system
3 and a surveillance assessment and/or response dispatch center.

4
5 (4) Increase the durability and survivability of the residence to terrorist
6 attack.

7
8 (a) Consider fitting windows with either Venetian blinds or
9 thick curtains to reduce the visibility of activities within the residence and to reduce
10 hazards of flying glass in the event of nearby explosions or gunfire.

11
12 (b) Install backup power systems for security devices, to
13 include: surveillance systems, communication systems, and access control systems.

14
15 (c) Establish backup communications with the installation or
16 embassy security department via secure landline or two-way radio.

17
18 (d) Consider placing a panic alarm bell to the outside of the
19 house with switches on all floors of the residence. The panic alarm should also
20 annunciate at the local police and the appropriate DOD or DOS security office.

21
22 (e) Install a safe haven in the home.

23
24 (5) Home Security Practices and Procedures.

25
26 (a) Executives, family members and staff should check
27 persons entering their residences; e.g., electricians, plumbers, telephone maintenance
28 personnel. If in doubt, the executive should call the person's office to verify the person's
29 identity before allowing them into the residence.

30
31 (b) Executives should not open the door to a caller at night
32 until the caller is identified by examination through a window or door viewer.

33
34 (c) The curtains in an executive's residence should be closed
35 before turning on lights.

36
37 (d) Executives should consider placing the telephone where
38 the executives shall not be seen from doors or windows when answering.

39
40 (e) Executives should investigate household staff (especially
41 temporary staff).

42
43 (f) Executive should always be on the lookout for unusual
44 activities and ensure their residence is locked and secure whenever the residence is
45 unattended. Executives should be cautious upon returning to their residence.

- 1 (g) Executives should note and report suspicious persons.
- 2
- 3 (h) Executives should strictly control house keys.
- 4
- 5 (i) Executives should secure their vehicles in locked garages.
- 6
- 7 (j) Executives should be alert for the unusual, such as the
- 8 movement of household furniture or the identification of unusual wires.
- 9
- 10 (k) The executive should consider the installation of a panic
- 11 alarm bell on the exterior of the residence, with the placement of annunciator switches on
- 12 every level of the residence.
- 13
- 14 (l) The area surrounding the executive's residence should be
- 15 cleared of dense foliage or shrubbery.
- 16
- 17 (m) If the executive's residence is equipped with a duress
- 18 alarm, the alarm should be routinely tested. Members of the executive's family should
- 19 understand how the duress alarm works and the situations when the alarm should be
- 20 activated.
- 21
- 22 (n) Executives should cooperate with ~~law enforcement~~
- 23 ~~security~~ personnel and abide by their ~~security~~ recommendations concerning ~~your home's~~
- 24 security.
- 25

26 7. Security at Social and Recreational Activities.

27 Executives shall routinely be at risk to terrorist incidents, but they must continue

28 with their professional as well as personal lives. The following measures are intended to

29 permit executives to continue living as close to a normal life as possible while still

30 remaining mindful of the risks to their security.

31

- 32
- 33 a. Executives should ensure their hosts are aware of the executive's need for
- 34 security and that the host establishes appropriate security measures.
- 35
- 36 b. Executives should have their personal staff assist a civilian host if required.
- 37
- 38 c. Executives should arrange for visitors to be subject to adequate security
- 39 control.
- 40
- 41 d. Executives or their staff should screen the invitation lists, if possible.
- 42
- 43 e. Executives should vary the times of their athletic activities, such as golfing,
- 44 jogging, etc.
- 45

46 8. Travel Safety

1
2 a. Executives are most often at their peak accessibility to terrorists when they
3 are in transit in official or privately owned vehicles. This section recommends steps to
4 reduce the vulnerability of executives while in transit. Implementation of measures to
5 enhance the transportation security of DOD executives must be in full compliance with
6 US laws and DOD directives.

7
8 b. The domicile to duty transportation policy follows:

9
10 (1) As a general rule, Congress has strongly opposed provision of
11 home to office (domicile to duty) transportation by the Federal Government to its officers
12 and employees. Congress did, however, grant authority to the President and the heads of
13 executive agencies and departments to provide domicile to duty transportation under
14 certain circumstances. According to statute, "a passenger carrier may be used to transport
15 between residence and place of employment. An officer or employee with regard to
16 whom the head of a Federal agency can make a determination, [if] that highly unusual
17 circumstances present a clear and present danger, that an emergency exists, or that
18 compelling operational considerations make such transportation essential to the conduct
19 of official business."

20
21 (2) The phrase, "highly unusual circumstances which present a clear
22 and present danger", is understood to mean that the perceived danger is:

23
24 (a) Real danger, not imagined.

25
26 (b) Immediate or imminent danger, not merely potential
27 danger.

28
29 (c) A showing is made that the use of a government vehicle
30 would provide protection against the danger that would otherwise not be available.

31
32 (3) The phrase, "emergency exists", is understood to mean that there is
33 an immediate, unforeseeable, temporary need to provide home-to-work transportation for
34 an agency's essential employees.

35
36 (4) The phrase, "similarly compelling operational considerations," is
37 understood to mean that there is an element of gravity or importance to the need for
38 government furnished transportation "comparable to the gravity or importance associated
39 with a clear and present danger or an emergency situation." The Congress suggested
40 further, "in such instances, [it is expected] that home-to-work transportation would be
41 provided only for those employees who are essential to the operation of the Government.

42
43 c. Local official and unofficial travels.

44
45 (1) Executives should vary their daily pattern as much as possible,
46 leaving and returning to their office or residence at different times.

- 1
2 (2) Executives should consider escorts to and from work, or travel with
3 a neighbor.
4
5 (3) Executives should establish a simple duress procedure with their
6 drivers. Any oral or visual signal shall suffice (i.e., something that the executive or
7 driver says or does only if something is amiss).
8
9 (4) When using a taxi service, the executive should vary the taxi
10 company. The executive should ensure that the identification photo on the taxi license
11 matches the driver. If the executive is uneasy for any reason, the executive should simply
12 take another taxi.
13
14 (5) When attending social functions, executives should attend the event
15 with other guests if possible.
16
17 (6) Executives should examine their vehicle before entering to see if
18 there has been any interference. A small mirror on a rod is a cheap and effective method
19 to inspect underneath cars. Executives should not touch their vehicles until it has been
20 thoroughly checked (look inside it, walk around it, and look under it).
21
22 (7) Executives should not leave personal items exposed in their
23 vehicle, e.g., uniform items, service issued maps, official briefcases, etc.
24
25 (8) Executives should use the same precautions when driving their
26 privately owned vehicle (POV) or a government owned vehicle (GOV).
27
28 (9) Executives should keep their car doors locked and not open
29 windows more than a few inches.
30
31 (10) Executives should never overload a vehicle and ensure that all
32 persons wear seat belts.
33
34 (11) Executives should always park vehicles in parking areas that are
35 either locked or watched and never park overnight on the street. Before entering
36 vehicles, executives should check for signs of tampering.
37
38 (12) Executives should keep the trunk of their vehicle locked.
39
40 (13) Where feasible, executives should drive in the inner lanes to keep
41 from being forced to the curb.
42
43 (14) Executives should use defensive and evasive driving techniques.
44 Executives should drill with their drivers by watching for suspicious cars and taking
45 evasive action.
46
-

1 (15) Executives should avoid driving close behind other vehicles,
2 especially service trucks, and be aware of activities and road conditions two to three
3 blocks ahead.

4
5 (16) Executives should be aware of minor accidents that could block
6 traffic in suspect areas. Crossroads are especially dangerous because they are preferred
7 areas for terrorist or criminal activities since crossroads offer escape advantages to the
8 attacker.

9
10 (17) Executives should take the following actions if they are attacked
11 and a roadblock is encountered:

12
13 (a) Use the shoulder or curb (hit at a 30- to 45-degree angle)
14 to go around the roadblock.

15
16 (b) If needed, ram the terrorist blocking vehicle in a non-
17 engine area, at a 45-degree angle, in low gear, and at a constant moderate speed. The
18 main purpose of ramming the vehicle is to knock the blocking vehicle out of the way. In
19 all cases, the executive's vehicle should not stop and the executive's vehicle should never
20 be boxed in with a loss of maneuverability. Whenever an executive's vehicle veers away
21 from a terrorist vehicle, the executive's vehicle is placed in an adverse position and it
22 presents a better target to gunfire.

23
24 d. Interurban, national, and international travel security practices and
25 procedures.

26
27 (1) Executive airline seats should be booked at the last moment. If
28 possible, the executive's seats should be booked using an alias.

29
30 (2) The use of an executive's rank or title should be restricted.

31
32 (3) Executives should not allow unknown visitors into their hotel room
33 or suite.

34
35 (4) Executives should keep their staff and family members advised of
36 their itinerary and subsequent changes to the itinerary. Executives should strictly restrict
37 their itinerary information to only those individuals who require this information as a part
38 of their official duties.

39
40 e. Statutory Authorities and Limitations.

41
42 The Secretary of Defense has statutory authority to allow a combatant
43 commander to use government owned or leased vehicles to provide transportation in an
44 area outside the United States for members of the uniformed services and other DOD
45 personnel under certain circumstances. Such circumstances include and are limited to a
46 determination by the combatant commander that public or private transportation in the

1 area is unsafe or is not available. Under such circumstances, the Department of Defense
2 may provide transportation, usually in government buses or passenger vans to personnel
3 and their family members if in so doing, it shall permit the combatant commander and his
4 subordinate commanders to maintain capability to perform or to undertake assigned
5 missions. Such transportation is not intended to be used to convey persons from their
6 residences to their places of work.

7
8 f. DOD Non-tactical Armored Vehicle Policy.

9
10 (1) It is DOD policy to make non-tactical armored vehicles (NTAV)
11 available where necessary to enhance the security of high-risk personnel, consistent with
12 the requirements and limitations found in DOD Directive C-4500.51, *DOD Non-*
13 *Tactical Armored Vehicle Policy*. DOD issuances, Service regulations, and combatant
14 commander guidance stipulate detailed procedures through which the Department of
15 Defense manages NTAV programs.

16
17 (2) The Department of Defense categorizes non-tactical armored
18 vehicles as heavy non-tactical armored vehicles (HAV) and light non-tactical armored
19 vehicles (LAV) (these are normally armored sedans or sport utility vehicles).

20
21 (a) HAVs are fully armored vehicles intended to protect
22 occupants from terrorist attacks using bombs, improvised explosive devices, grenades,
23 and high velocity small arms projectiles. These vehicles are authorized on a case by case
24 basis for designated high-risk personnel by ASD (SO/LIC). Factors to be considered are:

25
26 1. Country Threat Level. HAVs are for use primarily
27 overseas in countries with High Terrorist Threat Levels. Considerations include the
28 threat capability and vulnerability of the target, and environment in which the threat
29 operates.

30
31 2. Protection Level. The threat must warrant the
32 increased protection an HAV provides.

33
34 3. Availability of Existing Assets. Diversion of existing
35 HAVs is not possible.

36
37 (b) LAVs are less than fully armored vehicles (normally
38 armored after purchase) intended to protect occupants from terrorist attacks using
39 medium velocity small arms projectiles and at least some types of improvised explosive
40 devices. LAVs are used to protect high-risk personnel who require protection but are not
41 authorized the use of an HAV.

42
43 (3) Each of the Departments and some Defense Agencies (DIA, NSA,
44 etc.) manage a portion of the DOD Non-Tactical Heavy Armored Vehicle Program. Each
45 of these components has issued supplementary mandatory guidance on processing of
46 requests for, as well as allocation and use of, these scarce assets.

1
2 (4) HAVs are complex systems requiring specialized maintenance and
3 operation. As a general rule, HAVs shall be assigned to DOD personnel with a driver
4 who has been properly trained in the operation and maintenance of the vehicle. The
5 operator is not a chauffeur; he or she is an integral part of a supplemental security
6 package provided by the Department of Defense to meet its obligations to protect its key
7 assets. HAVs are only justified where highly unusual circumstances present a clear and
8 present danger to the health and safety of a nominated protectee, or compelling
9 operational considerations make such transportation essential for the conduct of official
10 business.

11
12 (5) LAVs may also be provided by the US Government to DOD
13 executives where "highly unusual circumstances present a clear and present danger to the
14 health and safety of a nominated protectee or compelling operational considerations"
15 warrant their use. This category of non-tactical armored vehicle features "add-on" or
16 "kit" armoring. While a less complex armoring system than those used in heavy NTAVs,
17 "light" NTAVs afford substantial protection to occupants against a wide variety of
18 threats. New developments in after manufacture armoring kits for vehicles are occurring
19 at a rapid pace, increasing the number of vehicle manufacturers and models for which
20 "other NTAV" modifications are suitable.

21
22 (6) The use of privately owned vehicles by high risk personnel is not
23 recommended during periods of high risk. Armored non-tactical vehicles shall be used
24 when available. High risk personnel and their protective details should take the
25 appropriate measures identified in appendixes 12 and 13 of DOD O-2000.12-H
26

27 **9. Protective Security Operations**

28
29 a. Each Department is authorized to provide Protective Security Details (PSD)
30 for key senior military officers, DOD civilians, other US Government officials or foreign
31 dignitaries requiring personal protection.

32
33 b. Each Department's Secretary upon recommendations of their
34 counterintelligence and/or law enforcement investigation staffs makes assignment of
35 PSDs to executives. PSDs are assigned to DOD personnel who meet requirements
36 established by Service regulations. In general, PSDs may be assigned only to those
37 executives whose position or assignment places them at risk and whose continued
38 availability to the President, Secretary of Defense, and combatant commanders is vital to
39 the execution of DOD missions.

40
41 c. General Security Concept. Protective Security Details provide high levels of
42 security to an executive (protectee) by establishing a series of protective cordons around
43 the executive. The establishment of defense in depth often means that the innermost
44 protective layer is in close contact with the protectee at all hours of the day and night.

45
46 d. Maintenance of Low Profiles. PSDs are trained in the art of maintaining low

1 profiles. Not only are they concerned about the visibility of the protectee, they are also
2 concerned about their ability to blend the protectees into the surrounding environment.
3 The security of a protectee is severely damaged when the presence of the PSD is obvious
4 and detectable, when all other measures to blend the protectee into the local environment
5 have been successful.

6
7 e. PSDs shall strive to limit the publication of the protectee's travel routes and
8 means of transportation. If the protectee's travel routes and means of travel must be
9 published, the PSD may suggest editorial changes to the itinerary scheduled for public
10 release in order to limit details of the protectee's travel. For example, routes to and from
11 announced appointments usually do not need to be released to the public.

12
13 f. PSD Mission Duties.

14
15 (1) During the course of a PSD mission, members of the PSD may be
16 asked to perform several different security functions. They may, for example, perform
17 direct or indirect protection or escort duties. Direct protection is open and obvious;
18 indirect protection is generally a surveillance measure. The security guard unit may
19 operate as an interior guard and may consist of one or more PSD members stationed at
20 fixed posts. PSD members should know the identity of each individual in the protectee's
21 party; protectees can assist PSD members in the performance of their duties by
22 introducing PSD members to each member of the official party.

23
24 (2) The attitude of the protectee is critical to the success of the PSD
25 mission. Protectees do have a right and a responsibility to make their wishes known with
26 respect to their personal security; they also have an obligation to listen carefully to the
27 head of the PSD who is trained and highly qualified to assist the protectee in making
28 reasonable judgments about manageable risks. PSD members understand their function
29 is inherently intrusive, and that protectees can easily resent the loss of privacy that
30 accompanies the protection offered. On the other hand, PSDs must accomplish their
31 mission, not merely to protect executives, but to help safeguard mission critical assets -
32 DOD executives.

33
34 (3) One of the PSD's most demanding functions is to limit the ability
35 of individuals to circulate and approach the protectee. This is often very frustrating to
36 protectees who wish to shake hands, engage in close conversations with visitors, and
37 move freely without impediment in a social situation. PSDs are trained to strictly enforce
38 limitations on the circulation of individuals, carefully checking each person for
39 identification and ascertaining they are authorized to be present at the event.

40
41 (4) Executives with PSDs who must conduct official business or hold
42 social engagements in large rooms can take several steps to minimize the potential
43 disruptions that may occur as a result of good security practices.

44
45 (a) Executives should provide PSDs an attendee list prior to
46 the function.

1
2 (b) One or more members of the executive's staff who know
3 the attendees should be stationed with PSD members to identify the attendees as they
4 arrive.

5
6 (c) Executive staffs should inform attendees that they shall be
7 admitted only at specified entrances.

8
9 (d) PSD members are highly trained security specialists.
10 While in the company of protectees, PSD members must be fully alert (no alcoholic
11 drinks and/or drugs and medications), accommodating and helpful. Protectees should
12 remember, however, that the PSD member's primary duty is the executive's protection,
13 not to perform errands or to accomplish personal services for the executive. PSD
14 members performing valet or other chores cannot effectively protect the executives.

15
16 **10. Executive Protection System Integration**

17
18 a. The key to successful executive protection is to ensure the level of protection
19 afforded, by AT measures, operational procedures in the office and at home, and
20 ~~protective security details~~ PSDs, is constant. The level of protection must be matched to
21 the threat, and must be sustainable.

22
23 b. Executives have a special responsibility to set a personal example of
24 ~~combating~~ terrorism awareness, attention to personal, family, office, information and
25 operations security concerns, and of AT security measures implementation. By doing so,
26 they make their colleagues and subordinates more aware, more conscious of their security
27 environment, and less likely to be victimized by terrorist attacks.
28

| JURISDICTIONAL AUTHORITY FOR HANDLING TERRORIST INCIDENTS | | | | | |
|--|------------------------------------|--|---|--|--|
| | INITIAL RESPONSE | PRIMARY AUTHORITY/ JURISDICTION | PRIMARY ENFORCEMENT RESPONSIBILITY | EXERCISING CONTROL OF MILITARY ASSETS | PRIMARY INVESTIGATIVE RESPONSIBILITY |
| WITHIN THE UNITED STATES | | | | | |
| ON BASE | MILITARY POLICE | FBI/INSTALLATION COMMANDER | FBI/INSTALLATION COMMANDER | INSTALLATION OR UNIT COMMANDER (SUPPORT FBI) | FBI/NCIS/PMO CID/AFOSI |
| OFF BASE | CIVIL POLICE | FBI/CIVIL POLICE | FBI/CIVIL POLICE | | FBI |
| OUTSIDE THE UNITED STATES | | | | | |
| ON BASE | MILITARY POLICE | HOST GOVERNMENT/DOS INSTALLATION COMMANDER | HOST GOVERNMENT/DOS INSTALLATION COMMANDER | INSTALLATION OR UNIT COMMANDER (IAW APPLICABLE STATUS-OF-FORCES AGREEMENT OR OTHER BILATERAL AGREEMENTS GOVERNING THE EMPLOYMENT OF MILITARY FORCES) | HOST GOVERNMENT/ NCIS/PMO CID AFOSI |
| OFF BASE | HOST-COUNTRY LAW ENFORCEMENT | HOST GOVERNMENT/DOS | HOST GOVERNMENT/DOS | INSTALLATION OR UNIT COMMANDER (IAW APPLICABLE STATUS-OF-FORCES AGREEMENT OR OTHER BILATERAL AGREEMENTS GOVERNING THE EMPLOYMENT OF MILITARY FORCES) | HOST GOVERNMENT WITH SUPPORT FROM US LAW ENFORCEMENT AGENCIES AS PROVIDED FOR IN BILATERAL AGREEMENTS |
| | NOTE: | Coordinate with the local Staff Judge Advocate to clarify authority and questions of jurisdiction. Coordinate with Department of State officials as required. Coordinate in advance with local law enforcement agencies to ensure that support procedures are in place and established information/communication channels are functioning. | | | |
| | LEGEND: | AFOSI: Air Force Office of Special Investigations FBI: Federal Bureau of Investigation NCIS: Naval Criminal Investigative Service PMO: Provost Marshal's Office CID: Criminal Investigation Division DOS: Department of State | | | |

Figure J-1. Jurisdictional Authority for Handling Terrorist Incidents

1
2
3
4
5
6
7
8
9
10
11
12
13
14
15
16
17
18
19
20
21
22

Intentionally Blank

1
2
3
4
5
6
7
8
9
10
11
12
13
14
15
16
17
18
19
20
21
22
23
24
25
26
27
28
29
30
31
32
33
34
35
36
37
38
39
40
41
42
43
44
45
46

APPENDIX K REFERENCES

The development of Joint Pub 3-07.2 is based upon the following primary references:

1. Presidential Military Order of November 13, 2001, *Detention, Treatment, and Trial of Certain Non-Citizens in the War Against Terrorism*

2. Public Law 107-314—Dec. 2, 2002, *Bob Stump National Defense Authorization Act for Fiscal Year 2003*.

3. Public Law 107-296—Nov. 25, 2002, *Homeland Security Act of 2002*.

4. Statement by Mr. Paul McHale, Assistant Secretary of Defense for Homeland Defense Before the 108th Congress Senate Armed Services Committee U.S:US Senate April 8, 2003.

5. United States Department of State, *Patterns of Global Terrorism ~~2002~~ 2003, April 2004*.

6. DOD Military Commission Order No. 1, *Procedures for Trials by Military Commissions of Certain Non-United States Citizens in the War on Terrorism*.

7. *National Strategy for Combating Terrorism*, February 2003.

8. National Security Strategy of the USA, September 2002.

89. National Strategy for Homeland Security, July 2002.

10. National Strategy for the Physical Protection of Critical Infrastructure and Key Assets, February 2003.

911. The U.S:US Coast Guard Maritime Strategy for Homeland Security, December 2002.

1012. Statements for the Record of Assistant Directors of the Federal Bureau of Investigation before House Committees and Subcommittees of the US Congress.

1113. United States Government Interagency Domestic Terrorism Concept of Operations Plan, January 2001.

1214. Operational Law Handbook (2003).

1315. DODD 2000.12, DoOD Antiterrorism (AT) Program.

1416. DOD O-2000.12-H, *DOD Antiterrorism Handbook*, 9 February 2004.

-
- 1
2 | ~~1517~~. DODD 3020, Defense Critical Infrastructure Protection
3
4 | ~~1618~~. DODD 3025.1, Military Support to Civil Authorities (MSCA).
5
6 | ~~1719~~. DODD 3025.12, Military Assistance for Civil Disturbances (MACDIS).
7
8 | ~~1820~~. DODD 3025.15, Military Assistance to Civil Authorities.
9
10 | 21. DOD Directive 5200.27, Acquisition of Information Concerning Persons and
11 | Organizations not Affiliated with the Department of Defense.
12
13 | ~~1922~~. DODD 5240.1, DeOD Intelligence Activities.
14
15 | ~~2023~~. DODD 5240.1-R, Procedures Governing the Activities of DeOD Intelligence
16 | Components that Affect United States Persons.
17
18 | ~~2124~~. DODI 5240.6, Counterintelligence Awareness and Briefing Program.
19
20 | ~~2225~~. DODD 5525.5, DeOD Cooperation with Civilian Law Enforcement Officials.
21
22 | ~~2326~~. DODI 2000.14, DeOD Combating Terrorism Program Procedures.
23
24 | ~~2427~~. DODI 2000.16, DeOD Antiterrorism Standards.25. JP 1-01, Joint Doctrine
25 | Development System.
26
27 | 28. DOD Directive 5105.62, Defense Threat Reduction Agency.
28
29 | ~~2628~~. JP 1-02, DOD Dictionary of Military and Associated Terms.
30
31 | ~~2729~~. JP 2-0, Doctrine for Intelligence Support to Joint Operations.
32
33 | ~~2830~~. JP 3-0, Doctrine for Joint Operations.
34
35 | ~~2931~~. JP 3-05, Doctrine for Joint Special Operations.
36
37 | ~~3032~~. JP 3-07, Joint Doctrine for Military Operations Other Than War.
38
39 | ~~31-33~~. JP 3-08, Interagency Coordination During Joint Operations.
40
41 | ~~3234~~. JP 3-10, Doctrine for Joint Rear Area Operations.
42
43 | ~~3335~~. JP 3-16, Joint Doctrine for Multinational Operations.
44
45 | ~~3436~~. JP 3-26, Joint Doctrine for Homeland Security
46

References

- 1 [3537](#). JP 3-54, *Joint Doctrine for Operations Security*. |
2
3 [3638](#). CJCSI 3121.01A, *Standing Rules of Engagement for US Forces (U)*. |
4
5 [3739](#). CJCSM 3122.03A, *Joint Operation Planning and Execution System Vol II,* |
6 *Planning Formats and Guidance*.
7
8 [40. DCI Memorandum, Homeland Security Information Sharing Memorandum of](#) |
9 [Understanding, 4 March 2003 \(DAC-01355-03\).](#)
10
11 [41. DepSecDef Memorandum, Collection, Reporting, and Analysis of Terrorist Threats](#) |
12 [to DOD Within the United States, 2 May 2003 \(U05646-03\).](#) |
13
14
15

1
2
3
4
5
6
7
8
9
10
11
12
13
14
15
16
17
18
19
20
21
22
23

Intentionally Blank

1
2
3
4
5
6
7
8
9
10
11
12
13
14
15
16
17
18
19
20
21
22
23
24
25
26
27
28
29
30
31
32
33
34
35
36
37
38
39
40
41
42
43
44
45
46

APPENDIX L
ADMINISTRATIVE INSTRUCTIONS

1. User Comments

Users in the field are highly encouraged to submit comments on this publication to Commander, United States Joint Forces Command, Joint Warfighting Center, Attn: Doctrine Group, 116 Lake View Parkway, Suffolk, VA 23435-2697. These comments should address content (accuracy, usefulness, consistency, and organization), writing, and appearance.

2. Authorship

The lead agent and Joint Staff doctrine sponsor for this publication is the Director for Operations (J-3).

3. Supersession

This publication supersedes JP 3-07.2, 25 June 1993, *Joint Tactics, Techniques, and Procedures for Antiterrorism*.

4. Change Recommendations

- a. Recommendations for urgent changes to this publication should be submitted:

TO: JOINT STAFF WASHINGTON DC//J34//
INFO: JOINT STAFF WASHINGTON DC//J7-JDETD//
CDRUSJFCOM SUFFOLK VA//JW100//

Routine changes should be submitted to the Director for Operational Plans and Interoperability (J-7), JDETD, 7000 Joint Staff Pentagon, Washington, DC 20318-7000 with info copy to USJFCOM JWFC (JW100).

- b. When a Joint Staff directorate submits a proposal to the Chairman of the Joint Chiefs of Staff that would change source document information reflected in this publication, that directorate will include a proposed change to this publication as an enclosure to its proposal. The Military Services and other organizations are requested to notify the Director, J-7, Joint Staff, when changes to source documents reflected in this publication are initiated.

1
2
3
4
5
6
7
8
9
10
11
12
13
14
15
16
17
18
19
20
21
22
23
24
25
26
27
28
29
30
31
32
33
34
35
36
37
38
39
40
41
42
43
44
45
46

c. Record of Changes:

| CHANGE NUMBER | COPY NUMBER | DATE OF CHANGE | DATE ENTERED | POSTED BY | REMARKS |
|---------------|-------------|----------------|--------------|-----------|---------|
| | | | | | |
| | | | | | |
| | | | | | |

5. Distribution

a. Copies of this publication can be obtained in CD format for initial distribution through the Service publication centers listed below or electronically through the Joint Electronic Library (<http://www.dtic.mil/doctrine/>).

b. Only approved joint publications and joint test publications are releasable outside the combatant commands, Services, and Joint Staff. Release of any classified joint publication to foreign governments or foreign nationals must be requested through the local embassy (Defense Attaché Office) to DIA Foreign Liaison Office, PO-FL, Room 1E811, 7400 Defense Pentagon, Washington, DC 20301-7400.

c. Additional copies should be obtained from the Military Service assigned administrative support responsibility by DOD Directive 5100.3, 15 November 1999, *Support of the Headquarters of Unified, Specified, and Subordinate Joint Commands*.

By Military Services:

Army: US Army AG Publication Center SL
1655 Woodson Road
Attn: Joint Publications
St. Louis, MO 63114-6181.

Air Force: Air Force Publications Distribution Center
2800 Eastern Boulevard
Baltimore, MD 21220-2896

Navy: CO, Naval Inventory Control Point
700 Robbins Avenue
Bldg 1, Customer Service
Philadelphia, PA 19111-5099

Marine Corps: Commander (ATTN: Publications)
814 Redford Blvd, Suite 20321
Albany, GA 31704-0321

1 Coast Guard: Commandant US Coast Guard (G-OPD)
2 2100 2nd Street, SW
3 Washington, DC 20593-0001
4
5 USJFCOM Commander
6 USJFCOM JWFC Code JW2102
7 Doctrine Group (Publication Distribution)
8 116 Lake View Parkway
9 Suffolk, VA 23435-2697
10

11 d. Local reproduction is authorized and access to unclassified publications is
12 unrestricted. However, access to and reproduction authorization for classified joint
13 publications must be in accordance with DOD Regulation 5200.1-R, *Information Security*
14 *Program*.
15
16
17

Appendix L

1
2
3
4
5
6
7
8
9
10
11
12
13
14
15
16
17
18
19
20
21
22

Intentionally Blank

1
2
3
4
5
6
7
8
9
10
11
12
13
14
15
16
17
18
19
20
21
22
23
24

GLOSSARY
PART I — ABBREVIATIONS AND ACRONYMS

| | |
|---------------|---|
| AFOSI | Air Force Office of Special Investigations |
| AOR | area of responsibility |
| ASD/HD | Assistant Secretary of Defense for Homeland Defense |
| ASD(SO/LIC) | Assistant Secretary of Defense (Special Operations and Low-Intensity Conflict) |
| AT | antiterrorism |
| ATCC | Antiterrorism Coordinating Committee |
| ATCC-SSG | Antiterrorism Coordinating Committee Senior Steering Group |
| ATEP | Antiterrorism Enterprise Portal |
| ATO | antiterrorism officer |
| <u>CARVER</u> | <u>Criticality, Accessibility, Recuperability, Vulnerability, Effect, and Recognizability</u> |
| C-B | chemical-biological |
| CBRNE | chemical, biological, radiological, nuclear, and high yield explosives |
| CbT | combating terrorism |
| CbT RIF | combating terrorism readiness initiatives fund |
| CI | counterintelligence |

Glossary

| | | |
|----|--------------|---|
| 1 | CIA | Central Intelligence Agency |
| 2 | CIFA | Counterintelligence Field Activity |
| 3 | CISO | counterintelligence support officer; <u>counterintelligence staff officer</u> |
| 4 | | |
| 5 | CJCS | Chairman of the Joint Chiefs of Staff |
| 6 | COM | Chief of Mission |
| 7 | CONUS | Continental United States |
| 8 | CT | counterterrorism |
| 9 | <u>CVAMP</u> | <u>Core Vulnerability Assessment Management Program</u> |
| 10 | | |
| 11 | DCI | Director of Central Intelligence |
| 12 | DEST | Domestic Emergency Support Team |
| 13 | DHHS | Department of Health and Human Services |
| 14 | DHS | Department of Homeland Security |
| 15 | DIA | Defense Intelligence Agency |
| 16 | DOD | Department of Defense |
| 17 | DODD | Department of Defense <u>D</u> irective |
| 18 | DODI | Department of Defense <u>I</u> nstruction |
| 19 | DOE | Department of Energy |
| 20 | DOJ | Department of Justice |
| 21 | DOS | Department of State |

| | | |
|----|------------|---|
| 1 | DOT | Department of Transportation |
| 2 | | |
| 3 | EOC | emergency operations center |
| 4 | EOD | explosive ordnance disposal |
| 5 | EPA | Environmental Protection Agency |
| 6 | | |
| 7 | FAA | Federal Aviation Administration |
| 8 | FBI | Federal Bureau of Investigation |
| 9 | FCG | Foreign Clearance Guide |
| 10 | FEMA | Federal Emergency Management Agency |
| 11 | FP | force protection |
| 12 | FPCON | force protection condition |
| 13 | | |
| 14 | <u>HAV</u> | <u>Heavy Non-Tactical Armored Vehicle</u> |
| 15 | HLD | homeland defense |
| 16 | HLS | homeland security |
| 17 | HN | host nation |
| 18 | HNS | host-nation support |
| 19 | HQ | headquarters |
| 20 | HSAS | Homeland Security Advisory System |

Glossary

1

2 IAW in accordance with

3 IED improvised explosive device

4 IPPT Installation Antiterrorism Program and Planning Tool

5 IR information requirement

6

7 J-2 Intelligence Directorate of a joint staff

8 JDOMS Joint Director of Military Support

9 JFC joint force commander

10 ~~JTF-CB~~ JITF-CT Joint Intelligence Task Force for Combating Terrorism

11 JRA joint rear area

12 JRAC joint rear area coordinator

13 JSIVA Joint Staff Integrated Vulnerability Assessment

14 JTF joint task force

15

16 LFA lead federal agency

17

18 MAA

19 MARSEC maritime security

20 MEVA Mission Essential Vulnerable Area

| | | |
|----|----------------|--|
| 1 | MOA | memorandum of agreement |
| 2 | MOU | memorandum of understanding |
| 3 | <u>MSHARPP</u> | <u>Mission, Symbolism, History, Accessibility,</u> |
| 4 | | <u>Recognizability, Population, and Proximity</u> |
| 5 | MWD | military working dog |
| 6 | | |
| 7 | | |
| 8 | NCIS | Naval Criminal Investigative Service |
| 9 | NSC | National Security Council |
| 10 | <u>NTAV</u> | <u>Non-Tactical Armored Vehicle</u> |
| 11 | | |
| 12 | OASD(PA) | Office of the Assistant Secretary of Defense (Public |
| 13 | | Affairs) |
| 14 | OCONUS | outside the continental United States |
| 15 | OGA | other government agency |
| 16 | OP | observation post |
| 17 | OPSEC | operations security |
| 18 | OSD | Office of the Secretary of Defense |
| 19 | | |
| 20 | PA | public affairs |
| 21 | PAO | public affairs officer |
| 22 | PCA | Posse Comitatus Act |

Glossary

| | | |
|----|------------------|---|
| 1 | PCC | Policy Coordination Committee |
| 2 | <u>PPBS PPBE</u> | Planning, Programming, and Budgeting, <u>and Execution</u> |
| 3 | | System |
| 4 | <u>PSA</u> | <u>port support activity</u> |
| 5 | <u>PSD</u> | <u>Protective Security Details</u> |
| 6 | | |
| 7 | <u>R&R</u> | <u>rest & recuperation</u> |
| 8 | | |
| 9 | RAM | random antiterrorism measures |
| 10 | | |
| 11 | ROE | rules of engagement |
| 12 | <u>R&R</u> | <u>rest & recuperation</u> |
| 13 | | |
| 14 | SAC | special agent in charge |
| 15 | | |
| 16 | | |
| 17 | | |
| 18 | SecDef | Secretary of Defense |
| 19 | SOFA | status-of-forces agreement |
| 20 | SOP | standing operating procedure |
| 21 | | |

| | | |
|----|------------|--|
| 1 | TA | threat assessment |
| 2 | | |
| 3 | | |
| 4 | UFR | unfunded requirement |
| 5 | USACIDC | United States Army Criminal Investigations Command |
| 6 | | |
| 7 | USCG | United States Coast Guard |
| 8 | USD(P) | Under Secretary of Defense for Policy |
| 9 | USNORTHCOM | United States Northern Command |
| 10 | | |
| 11 | VA | vulnerability assessment |
| 12 | | |
| 13 | WMD | weapons of mass destruction |
| 14 | WMDRF | weapons of mass destruction response function |
| 15 | WME | weapons of mass effects |
| 16 | | |

PART II — TERMS AND DEFINITIONS

antiterrorism. Defensive measures used to reduce the vulnerability of individuals and property to terrorist acts, to include limited response and containment by local military and civilian forces. (Upon approval of the revision of this pub, this definition will be included in JP 1-02.) Also called AT. (JP 1-02)

antiterrorism awareness. None. (Upon approval of this revision, this term and its definition will be removed from JP 1-02.)

civil support. Department of Defense support to US civil authorities for domestic emergencies, and for designated law enforcement and other activities. Also called CS. (Upon approval of this publication, this term and its definition will be included in JP 1-02. This term and its definition are provided for information and are proposed for inclusion in the next edition of JP 1-02 by JP 3-26.)

combating terrorism. Actions, including antiterrorism (defensive measures taken to reduce vulnerability to terrorist acts) and counterterrorism (offensive measures taken to prevent, deter, and respond to terrorism), taken to oppose terrorism throughout the entire threat spectrum. Also called CBT. (JP 1-02) (This term and its definition are provided for information and are proposed for inclusion in the next edition of JP 1-02 by JP 3-40.)

consequence management. Those measures taken to protect public health and safety, restore essential government services, and provide emergency relief to governments, businesses, and individuals affected by the consequences of a chemical, biological, nuclear, and/or high-yield explosive situation. For domestic consequence management, the primary authority rests with the States to respond and the Federal Government to provide assistance as required. Also called CM. See also nuclear, biological, and chemical defense. (JP 1-02)

counterintelligence. Information gathered and activities conducted to protect against espionage, other intelligence activities, sabotage, or assassinations conducted by or on behalf of foreign governments or elements thereof, foreign organizations, or foreign persons, or international terrorist activities. Also called CI. (JP 1-02)

counterintelligence support. Conducting counterintelligence activities to protect against espionage and other foreign intelligence activities, sabotage, international terrorist activities, or assassinations conducted for, or on behalf of, foreign powers, organizations, or persons. (JP 1-02)

counterterrorism. Offensive measures taken to prevent, deter, and respond to terrorism. Operations that include the offensive measures taken to prevent, deter, preempt, and respond to terrorism. Also called CT. (JP 1-02)

1 **deterrence.** The prevention from action by fear of the consequences. Deterrence is a
2 state of mind brought about by the existence of a credible threat of unacceptable
3 counteraction. (JP 1-02)

4
5 **DOD Elements and Personnel.** – A collective term meaning DOD military and civilian
6 personnel and their dependent family members; DOD contractors; DOD installations
7 and facilities; DOD owned, leased, or managed infrastructure and assets critical to
8 mission accomplishments; and other DOD-owned, leased, or managed mission
9 essential assets overseas and in the United States, its territories, and possessions.

10
11 **force protection.** Actions taken to prevent or mitigate hostile actions against
12 Department of Defense personnel (to include family members), resources, facilities,
13 and critical information. ~~These actions conserve the force's fighting potential so it can~~
14 ~~be applied at the decisive time and place and incorporate the coordinated and~~
15 ~~synchronized offensive and defensive measures to enable the effective employment of~~
16 ~~the joint force while degrading opportunities for the enemy.~~ Force protection does not
17 include actions to defeat the enemy or protect against accidents, weather, or disease.
18 Also called FP. (JP 1-02)

19
20 **force protection condition** — A Chairman of the Joint Chiefs of Staff-approved
21 program standardizing the Military Services' identification of and recommended
22 responses to terrorist threats against US personnel and facilities. This program
23 facilitates inter-Service coordination and support for antiterrorism activities. Also
24 called **FPCON**. There are four FPCONs above normal. a. **FPCON ALPHA** — This
25 condition applies when there is a general threat of possible terrorist activity against
26 personnel and facilities, the nature and extent of which are unpredictable, and
27 circumstances do not justify full implementation of FPCON BRAVO measures.
28 However, it may be necessary to implement certain measures from higher FPCONs
29 resulting from intelligence received or as a deterrent. The measures in this FPCON
30 must be capable of being maintained indefinitely. b. **FPCON BRAVO** — This
31 condition applies when an increased and more predictable threat of terrorist activity
32 exists. The measures in this FPCON must be capable of being maintained for weeks
33 without causing undue hardship affecting operational capability, and aggravating
34 relations with local authorities. c. **FPCON CHARLIE** — This condition applies
35 when an incident occurs or intelligence is received indicating some form of terrorist
36 action against personnel and facilities is imminent. Implementation of measures in this
37 FPCON for more than a short period probably will create hardship and affect the
38 peacetime activities of the unit and its personnel. d. **FPCON DELTA** — This
39 condition applies in the immediate area where a terrorist attack has occurred or when
40 intelligence has been received that terrorist action against a specific location or person
41 is likely. Normally, this FPCON is declared as a localized condition. (JP 1-02)

42
43 **high-risk personnel.** Personnel who, by their grade, assignment, symbolic value, or
44 relative isolation, are likely to be attractive or accessible terrorist targets. (JP 1-02)

1 **high – yield explosive.** Any conventional weapon or device that is capable of a high
2 order of destruction or disruption and/or of being used in such a manner as to kill or
3 injure large numbers of people. Also called HYE. (Upon approval of this revision, this
4 term and its definition will be included in JP 1-02.)

5
6 **homeland defense.** ~~Homeland defense is t~~The protection of ~~U.S.~~United States territory,
7 sovereignty, domestic population, and critical infrastructure against ~~military attacks~~
8 emanating from outside the United States external threats and aggression. Also called
9 HLD. ~~(Upon approval of the revision of this pub, this term and its definition will be~~
10 included in JP 1-02This term and its definition are provided for information and are
11 proposed for inclusion in the next edition of JP 1-02 by JP 3-26.)

12
13 **homeland security.** ~~Homeland security is the prevention, preemption, and deterrence of,~~
14 ~~and defense against, aggression targeted at U.S. territory, sovereignty, domestic~~
15 ~~population, and infrastructure as well as the management of the consequences of such~~
16 ~~aggression and other domestic emergencies. Homeland security is a national team~~
17 ~~effort that begins with local, state, and federal organizations. Also called HLS.~~
18 Homeland security, as defined in the National Strategy for Homeland Security, is a
19 concerted national effort to prevent terrorist attacks within the United States, reduce
20 America’s vulnerability to terrorism, and minimize the damage and recover from
21 attacks that do occur. The Department of Defense contributes to homeland security
22 through its military missions overseas, homeland defense, and support to civil
23 authorities. Also called HS. (Upon approval of the revision of this pub, this term and
24 its definition will be included in JP 1-02This term and its definition are provided for
25 information and are proposed for inclusion in the next edition of JP 1-02 by JP 3-26.)

26
27 **hostage.** A person held as a pledge that certain terms or agreements will be kept. (The
28 taking of hostages is forbidden under the Geneva Conventions, 1949). (JP 1-02)

29
30 **improvised explosive device.** A device placed or fabricated in an improvised manner
31 incorporating destructive, lethal, noxious, pyrotechnic, or incendiary chemicals and
32 designed to destroy, incapacitate, harass, or distract. It may incorporate military stores,
33 but is normally devised from nonmilitary components. Also called IED. (JP 1-02)

34
35 **incident control point.** A designated point close to a terrorist incident where crisis
36 management forces will rendezvous and establish control capability before initiating a
37 tactical reaction. Also called ICP. (JP 1-02)

38
39 **information operations.** Actions taken to affect adversary information and information
40 systems while defending one’s own information and information systems. Also called
41 IO. (JP 1-02)

42
43 **initial response force.** The first unit, usually military police, on the scene of a terrorist
44 incident. (JP 1-02)

45
46 **installation.** A grouping of facilities, located in the same vicinity, which support

1 particular functions. Installations may be elements of a base. (JP 1-02)

2
3 **installation commander.** The individual responsible for all operations performed by an
4 installation. (JP 1-02)

5
6 **insurgent.** Member of a political party who rebels against established leadership. (JP 1-
7 02)

8
9 **intelligence.** 1. The product resulting from the collection, processing, integration,
10 analysis, evaluation, and interpretation of available information concerning foreign
11 countries or areas. 2. Information and knowledge about an adversary obtained through
12 observation, investigation, analysis, or understanding. (JP 1-02)

13
14 **military assistance to civil authorities.** ~~Those activities and measures taken by DOD~~
15 ~~Components to foster mutual assistance and support between the Department of~~
16 ~~Defense and any civil government agency in planning or preparedness for, or in the~~
17 ~~application of resources for response to, the consequences of civil emergencies or~~
18 ~~attacks, including natural and manmade disasters, national security emergencies, and~~
19 ~~DOD assistance for civil disturbances, counterdrug, sensitive support, counterterrorism,~~
20 ~~and law enforcement. Also called MACA. The broad mission of civil support~~
21 ~~consisting of the three mission subsets of military support to civil authorities, military~~
22 ~~support to civilian law enforcement agencies, and military assistance for civil~~
23 ~~disturbances. Also called MACA. (Upon approval of this publication, this term and its~~
24 ~~definition will be included in JP 1-02) This term and its definition are provided for~~
25 ~~information and are proposed for inclusion in the next edition of JP 1-02 by 3-26.)~~

26
27 **negotiations.** ~~None. (Upon approval of this revision, this term and its definition will be~~
28 ~~removed from JP 1-02.)—A discussion between authorities and a barricaded offender or~~
29 ~~terrorist to effect hostage release and terrorist surrender. (JP 1-02)~~

30
31 **open-source intelligence.** Information of potential intelligence value that is available to
32 the general public. Also called OSINT. (JP 1-02)

33
34 **operations center.** The facility or location on an installation, base, or facility used by the
35 commander to command, control, and coordinate all ~~erisis-operational~~ activities. (Upon
36 approval of this revision, this term and its definition will modify the existing term and
37 its definition and will be included in JP 1-02.)

38
39 **operations security.** A process of identifying critical information and subsequently
40 analyzing friendly actions attendant to military operations and other activities to:
41 a. ~~I~~identify those actions that can be observed by adversary intelligence systems.
42 b. ~~D~~determine indicators hostile intelligence systems might obtain that could be
43 interpreted or pieced together to derive critical information in time to be useful to
44 adversaries. c. ~~S~~select and execute measures that eliminate or reduce to an acceptable
45 level the vulnerabilities of friendly actions to adversary exploitation. Also called
46 OPSEC. (JP 1-02)

- 1
2 **physical security.** That part of security concerned with physical measures designed to
3 safeguard personnel; to prevent unauthorized access to equipment, installations,
4 material and documents; and to safeguard them against espionage, sabotage, damage,
5 and theft. (JP 1-02)
6
7 **prevention.** The security procedures undertaken by the public and private sector in order
8 to discourage terrorist acts. (JP 1-02)
9
10 **primary target.** None. (Upon approval of this revision, this term and its definition will
11 be removed from JP 1-02.)
12
13 **proactive measures.** In antiterrorism, measures taken in the preventive stage of
14 antiterrorism designed to harden targets and detect actions before they occur. (JP 1-02)
15
16 **secondary targets.** None. (Upon approval of this revision, this term and its definition
17 will be removed from JP 1-02.)
18
19 **status-of-forces agreement.** An agreement ~~which that~~ defines the legal position of a
20 visiting military force deployed in the territory of a friendly state. Agreements
21 delineating the status of visiting military forces may be bilateral or multilateral.
22 Provisions pertaining to the status of visiting forces may be set forth in a separate
23 agreement, or they may form a part of a more comprehensive agreement. These
24 provisions describe how the authorities of a visiting force may control members of that
25 force and the amenability of the force or its members to the local law or to the authority
26 of local officials. To the extent that agreements delineate matters affecting the relations
27 between a military force and civilian authorities and population, they may be
28 considered as civil affairs agreements. Also called SOFA. (JP 1-02)
29
30 **terrorism.** The calculated use of unlawful violence or threat of unlawful violence to
31 inculcate fear; intended to coerce or to intimidate governments or societies in the
32 pursuit of goals that are generally political, religious, or ideological. ~~(This term and its~~
33 ~~definition replaces the existing term and its definition and is approved for inclusion in~~
34 ~~the next edition of~~ JP 1-02.)
35
36 **terrorist.** An individual who ~~uses violence, terror, and intimidation to achieve a result;~~
37 commits an act or acts of violence or threatens violence in pursuit of political, or
38 ideological objectives. (JP 1-02)
39
40 **terrorist groups.** Any ~~element regardless of size or espoused cause, which repeatedly~~
41 number of terrorists who assemble together, have a unifying relationship, or are
42 organized for the purpose of ~~committing an act or~~ acts of violence or threatens violence
43 in pursuit of ~~its their~~ political, religious, or ideological objectives. (JP 1-02)
44
45 terrorist threat level. An intelligence threat assessment of the level of terrorist threat
46 faced by US personnel and interests in a foreign country. The assessment is based on a

1 continuous intelligence analysis of a minimum of five elements: terrorist group
2 existence, capability, history, trends, and targeting. There are five threat levels:
3 NEGLIGIBLE, LOW, MEDIUM, HIGH, and CRITICAL. Threat levels should not be
4 confused with force protection conditions (FPCON). Threat level assessments are
5 provided to senior leaders to assist them in determining the appropriate local FPCON.
6 (Department of State also makes threat assessments, which may differ from those
7 determined by Department of Defense.) (JP 1-02)

8
9 **threat analysis.** In antiterrorism, ~~threat analysis is~~ a continual process of compiling and
10 examining all available information concerning potential terrorist activities by terrorist
11 groups which could target a facility. A threat analysis will review the factors of a
12 terrorist group's existence, capability, intentions, history, and targeting, as well as the
13 security environment within which friendly forces operate. Threat analysis is an
14 essential step in identifying probability of terrorist attack and results in a threat
15 assessment. (JP 1-02)

16
17 **threat and vulnerability assessment.** In antiterrorism, the pairing of a facility's threat
18 analysis and vulnerability analysis. (JP 1-02)

19
20 **vulnerability assessment.** A Department of Defense, command, or unit-level evaluation
21 (assessment) to determine the vulnerability of a terrorist attack against an installation,
22 unit, exercise, port, ship, residence, facility, or other site. Identifies areas of
23 improvement to withstand, mitigate, or deter acts of violence or terrorism. (JP 1-02)

24
25 **weapons of mass destruction.** — ~~A W~~weapons that ~~are is~~ capable of a high order of
26 destruction and/or of being used in such a manner as to destroy large numbers of
27 people. Weapons of mass destruction can be high explosives or nuclear, biological,
28 chemical, and radiological weapons, but exclude the means of transporting or
29 propelling the weapon where such means is a separable and divisible part of the
30 weapon. Also called WMD. (Upon approval of this revision, this term and its
31 definition will modify the existing term and its definition and will be included in JP 1-
32 02.)

33
34 ~~weapons of mass effects.~~ ~~A single system or device that can create large scale (over 1~~
35 ~~km² area, and/or result in hundreds to thousands of material or personnel "casualties")~~
36 ~~detrimental (lethal or non-lethal, including economic) effects to military or civilian~~
37 ~~operations. Also called WME. (Upon approval of the revision of this pub, this term~~
38 ~~and its definition will be included in JP 1-02.)~~

39
40

Glossary

- 1
- 2
- 3
- 4
- 5
- 6
- 7
- 8
- 9
- 10
- 11
- 12
- 13
- 14
- 15
- 16
- 17
- 18
- 19
- 20
- 21
- 22

Intentionally Blank

